

Oracle AutoVue 20.0.0

User's Manual

Copyright © 1999, 2010, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Portions of this software Copyright 1996-2007 Glyph & Cog, LLC.

Portions of this software Copyright Unisearch Ltd, Australia.

Portions of this software are owned by Siemens PLM © 1986-2008. All rights reserved.

This software uses ACIS® software by Spatial Technology Inc. ACIS® Copyright © 1994-1999 Spatial Technology Inc. All rights reserved.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this software or related documentation is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007).

Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy and other measures to ensure the safe use of this software. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software in dangerous applications.

This software and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third party content, products and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third party content, products or services.

Contents

Preface.....	13
Audience.....	13
Document Accessibility.....	13
Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation.....	13
Accessibility of Links to External Web Sites in Documentation.....	14
TTY Access to Oracle Support Services.....	14
Related Documents	14
Conventions	14
Introduction	17
Oracle AutoVue	17
Marking Up Documents.....	17
AutoVue Basics.....	19
AutoVue Version Information	19
Viewing Version and Build Information.....	19
AutoVue Graphical User Interface	20
Menu Bar	20
Toolbars.....	21
Navigation Panel.....	22
Markup Navigation Tree.....	27
Status Bar	27
Quick Menus.....	28
Opening Files	28
Opening a Local File	28
Opening a URL	29
Opening a File from a Server	29
Opening a File from a Backend DMS System	30
Streaming Files	31
Archive Files.....	32
File Properties	32
Navigating a Document with Multiple Pages	33
Working With 2D Files	35
Searching Text.....	35
2D Viewing Options.....	36
Using the Magnify Glass.....	39
Using the Pan and Zoom Window	40
Using the Magnify Window	40
Working with 2D Vector Files.....	41
Manipulating 2D Vector Files	41
Selecting Views.....	46

Specifying a View Point	46
Analyzing 2D Vector Files	47
Comparing 2D Files.....	48
Drawing Information.....	49
Measuring in 2D Files.....	51
2D Vector Snapping Modes	52
Distance in non-Vector Files	53
Distance in Vector Files.....	53
Calibrating Distance	54
Area in non-Vector Files	55
Area in Vector Files.....	55
Angle in non-Vector Files.....	56
Angle in Vector Files	57
Arc in non-Vector Files.....	58
Arc in Vector Files	58
Calibrating an Arc	59
Working with EDA Files.....	61
Navigation Panel	61
Customizing Columns.....	62
Components Tab	63
Nets Tab	64
Bookmarks Tab	65
Selecting Entities	65
From the Navigation Panel	66
From the Workspace	66
From the Entity Search Dialog	67
Zooming to a Selected Entity.....	67
Filtering Entity Types	68
Entity Properties	68
Viewing the Properties of an Entity.....	69
Navigating Design Hierarchy	72
Navigating using Ascend Hierarchy.....	72
Layers.....	72
Physical and Logical Layers Sections.....	73
Changing the Order of Layers.....	74
Modifying Visibility for Physical Layers.....	74
Modifying Visibility for Logical Layers.....	75
Changing Layer Color.....	76
Sorting Logical Layers	77
Layer Sets	77
Viewing Layer Sets	77
Creating User-Defined Layer Sets.....	78
Deleting User-Defined Layer Sets.....	79
Saving User-Defined Layers Sets with Markups	79
Manipulating EDA Views	80
3D View	80

Cross Probing	80
Cross Probing Between Two or More EDA Files	81
Cross Probing Between 2D and 3D Views of the Same File	82
Showing the Net Connectivity when Cross Probing	83
Zooming when Cross Probing	83
Comparing a PCB with Artwork	84
Generating Bill of Material (BOM)	85
Design Verification	86
Design Rule Checks	87
Verifying a Design	90
Exporting the Design Verification Results	91
Searching Using Entity Search	92
Performing an Entity Type-based Search	93
Performing an Attribute-based Search	94
Measuring in EDA Files	95
EDA Snapping Modes	95
Measuring Distance	97
Calibrating Distance	97
Measuring Minimum Distance	98
Measuring Area	99
Measuring an Angle	100
Measuring an Arc	101
Calibrating an Arc	101
Working with 3D Files	103
Models Tab and Model Tree	103
Views Tab	104
Bookmarks Tab	105
Global Axes	105
Selecting Model Parts	106
Select Model Parts from the Workspace	106
Selecting All Identical Parts of a Model	106
Re-Centering	107
Re-Centering a Model to a Selected Model Part	107
Re-Center All	107
Entity Reference	107
Re-Centering a Model to an Entity	108
Model Tree	108
Expanding/Collapsing the Model Tree	109
Viewing Missing XRef Notification Icon	109
Selecting Model Parts from the Model Tree	110
Hiding Model Parts	110
Creating 3D Mockups	110
Deleting Models from a Mockup	111
Manipulating Display of a 3D Model	112
Display Attributes	114
Render Modes	114

Changing the Visibility.....	115
Changing Model Color.....	116
Adjusting the Transparency.....	116
Light Settings.....	117
Setting Ambient Lighting	117
Setting Directional Lighting	118
Adding a New Light Source	118
Changing the Light Properties.....	119
Removing a Light Source.....	119
3D Views	120
Default View	120
Setting Standard or Camera Views.....	120
Setting Native Views.....	120
Creating a User-Defined View	121
Deleting a User-Defined View	121
Displaying the Perspective Projection of a 3D Model	122
Viewing a Model from a Particular View Point.....	122
Configuring Layers	123
Entity Properties	123
General Attributes	123
Viewing Attributes	124
Viewing Mass Properties	124
Configuring Mass Properties	125
Viewing Extents.....	126
File Properties	127
PMI Entities	127
PMI Filtering.....	128
Aligning to a PMI Entity.....	128
Go to a Displayed PMI Entity	128
PMI Configuration Entities	129
PMI Hyperlinks	130
Manipulating a 3D Model.....	130
Panning a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis.....	130
Rotating a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis.....	131
Scaling a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis.....	132
Part Alignment	132
Part Alignment Constraints.....	133
Aligning Model Parts	134
Transforming a 3D Model.....	135
Transforming a Model Using Illustration Buttons.....	136
Resetting the Transformation of a 3D Model	138
Transforming a Model by Setting Values	139
Sectioning	139
Section Plane Options.....	140
Cut Options.....	140
Defining the Section Plane and Cut-through.....	141

Exporting Section Edges	141
Exploding	142
Explode Options.....	142
Exploding a 3D Model.....	143
Saving an Exploded View of a 3D Model.....	144
User-Defined Coordinate Systems	144
Position Options.....	144
Orientation Options.....	145
Deleting a User Coordinate System	146
Modifying a User-Defined Coordinate System	146
Activating a Coordinate System.....	147
Defining a User Coordinate System	148
Interference Checks	148
Interference Check Options	149
Performing an Interference Check	149
Interference Check Results Options.....	150
Comparing 3D Files	151
Comparing 3D Files.....	152
Comparing Entity Sets	153
Generating a Bill of Material	155
Entity Search	156
Performing a Search	158
Performing a 3D Text Search.....	159
Performing an Attribute-based Search.....	159
Performing an Advanced 3D Search	161
Saving Search Results.....	162
Measuring in 3D Files.....	162
3D Snapping Modes	163
Measuring Distance	164
Calibrating Distance	166
Measuring Minimum Distance.....	167
Measuring an Angle.....	168
Measuring an Arc.....	168
Calibrating an Arc	169
Measuring Vertex Coordinates	169
Measuring the Length of an Edge	170
Measuring Face Surface	171
Walkthrough	172
Walkthrough Dialog	173
Walking Through a 3D Model	173
Adding Markups in Walkthrough Mode.....	174
Configuring AutoVue.....	177
General Options	178
Configuring Options for CAD Files	178
Raster Files.....	179
Rendering	179

Resources.....	180
Configuring Paths.....	180
Measurement.....	181
Configuring the Base Font for Text Files.....	182
Configuring AutoVue for 2D Files.....	183
Snap Settings.....	183
Overlays Extents Settings.....	183
Configuring Colors.....	183
Configuring AutoVue for 3D Files.....	184
Rendering.....	184
Dynamic Rendering.....	184
Frame Rate.....	185
Model.....	185
Loading.....	185
Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution.....	186
Initial Visibility.....	186
PMI Initial Visibility.....	186
PMI Filtering.....	186
Configuring Color.....	187
Configuring Background.....	188
Miscellaneous.....	189
Configuring AutoVue for EDA Files.....	190
Customizing Selections.....	190
Displaying Tooltips.....	191
Modifying 3D View.....	192
Synchronizing Layers when Comparing Files.....	192
Configuring Zoom Behavior when Cross Probing.....	193
Modifying Colors.....	193
Common.....	193
3D View.....	194
Configuring Background Colors for Graphic Files.....	194
Configuring Background Colors for Desktop Office.....	194
Markups.....	197
Markup Navigation Tree.....	198
Filtering Markups.....	199
Working with Markup Files.....	200
Saved States.....	200
Creating a Markup File.....	201
Entering Markup Information.....	201
Saving a New Markup File.....	202
Opening Markup Files.....	202
Saving an Existing Markup File.....	203
Importing a Markup File.....	203
Exporting a Markup File.....	204
Setting the Active Markup File.....	205
Changing the Active Markup File.....	205

Working with Markup Layers	206
Creating a Markup Layer	206
Setting the Active Markup Layer.....	207
Changing the Color of a Markup Layer.....	207
Renaming a Markup Layer.....	208
Toggling between Markup Layers.....	208
Deleting a Markup Layer	209
Moving a Markup Entity to Another Layer	209
Consolidating Markup Files	210
Marking up 2D and 3D Files.....	211
Adding an Attachment	212
Opening an Attachment	212
Editing an Attachment.....	213
Adding a Hyperlink	213
Creating a Hyperlink.....	213
Opening a Hyperlink.....	215
Editing a Hyperlink.....	215
Deleting a Hyperlink.....	215
Adding Signoff Entities.....	216
Rescinding the Signoff.....	216
Re-Approving a Signoff	217
Viewing the History of a Signoff	217
Creating an Intellistamp.....	217
Adding a Stamp.....	222
Creating a New Stamp Library	223
Deleting a Stamp Library	224
2D-Specific Markups.....	225
2D Markup Entities.....	225
Adding a Freestyle Entity.....	227
Aligning a Line Segment to the Vertical or Horizontal Axes.....	228
Adding a Leader	228
Creating 2D non-Vector Markup Measure Entities.....	229
Creating 2D Vector Markup Measure Entities	235
2D Vector Snapping Modes	235
Measuring Distance	236
Measuring Cumulative Distance	237
Calibrating Distance	238
Measuring Area	238
Measuring an Angle.....	239
Measuring an Arc.....	240
Calibrating an Arc	241
Creating EDA Markup Measure Entities	241
EDA Snapping Modes	242
Measuring Distance	243
Measuring Cumulative Distance	244
Calibrating Distance	245

Measuring Area	245
Measuring an Angle.....	246
Measuring an Arc.....	247
Calibrating an Arc	248
Measuring Minimum Distance.....	249
Adding Text.....	250
Hiding the box surrounding the text.....	250
Adding a Note.....	251
Nesting Markup Entities.....	252
3D-Specific Markups.....	252
3D Markup Entities.....	252
Creating 3D Markup Measure Entities	253
Adding Text	261
Adding a Note.....	263
Nesting Markup Entities	263
Working with Markup Entities	264
Go To a Markup Entity.....	264
Selecting Markup Entities	264
Moving a Markup Entity	265
Transforming Markup Entities.....	265
Rotating all Markup Entities.....	265
Rotating a selected Markup Entity	265
Flipping all Markup Entities	266
Hiding All Markup Entities.....	266
Hiding Markup Files.....	266
Grouping and Ungrouping Markup Entities.....	266
Deleting Markup Entities	267
Formatting Markup Entity Properties	268
Changing Line Color	268
Changing Line Style.....	269
Changing Line Thickness	269
Changing Arrow Style	270
Changing Fill Type.....	270
Changing Fill Color.....	271
Assigning a Markup Entity the Same Color as the Layer	271
Changing Font.....	272
Changing Measurement Units and Symbols	273
Using the Markup Entity Properties Dialog.....	273
Printing	279
Print Options.....	279
Configuring the Print Options	282
Print Margins.....	282
Setting the Margins.....	283
Header/Footer	283
Adding a Header and Footer	284
Adding a Header and Footer	285

Native Print Settings	286
Watermarks.....	286
Adding a Watermark	287
Assigning Pen Settings.....	288
Creating a New Pen Setting	289
Deleting a Pen Setting	289
Partial Preview of a File	289
Previewing a File Before Printing.....	290
Printing a File	290
Batch Printing	291
Conversion.....	293
Conversion Options.....	293
Converting a 3D Model	294
PDF.....	295
X and Y.....	295
Converting a File.....	296
Changing the Pen Settings	297
AutoVue Mobile.....	299
Creating a Mobile Pack.....	299
Viewing Mobile Packs	303
Creating Markup Files.....	304
Defining Markup Policy	305
Updating from Mobile Pack.....	308
Real-Time Collaboration	311
Collaboration User Tree	311
The Host.....	312
The Controller	312
Lock	312
Observer	313
Opening a File.....	313
Pointer	313
Session Information.....	314
Session Markup	314
Show Tracker.....	314
Collaboration Session	314
Initiating a Collaboration Session	315
Changing a User's Layer Color of a Session.....	316
Adding New Users to a Session	316
Opening a Markup While Initiating a Session	317
Opening a Markup During a Session	317
Joining a Session.....	318
Inviting Users During a Session	318
Removing Users from a Session	319
Assigning a Host During a Session	319
Passing Control of a Session to Another User	320
Saving a Session Markup	320

Closing a Session.....	321
Requesting Control of a Session	321
Tracking Changes	321
Unlocking a View	322
Locking a View	322
Viewing Session Information.....	323
Leaving a Session.....	323
Chat Window	323
Sending a Message to Selected Users.....	324
Sending a Message to All Users.....	324
AutoVue in Offline Mode.....	327
Managing Offline Files	327
Working in Offline Mode.....	328
Opening Offline Files.....	329
Removing Offline Files from AutoVue.....	329
Synchronizing Files in Offline Mode	330
Going Back Online	330
Appendix A: EDA Terms and Definitions	331
Index	345
Feedback	353
General Inquiries.....	353
Sales Inquiries	353
Customer Support.....	354

Preface

The *Oracle AutoVue User Manual* explores AutoVue's key capabilities and is designed to help you get the most out of AutoVue's extensive functionality.

Audience

This manual is intended for Oracle AutoVue end users.

Document Accessibility

Our goal is to make Oracle products, services, and supporting documentation accessible to all users, including users that are disabled. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Accessibility standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our customers. For more information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program Web site at <http://www.oracle.com/accessibility/>.

Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation

Screen readers may not always correctly read the code examples in this document. The conventions for writing code require that closing braces should appear on an otherwise empty line; however, some screen readers may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

Accessibility of Links to External Web Sites in Documentation

This documentation may contain links to Web sites of other companies or organizations that Oracle does not own or control. Oracle neither evaluates nor makes any representations regarding the accessibility of these Web sites.

TTY Access to Oracle Support Services

Oracle provides dedicated Text Telephone (TTY) access to Oracle Support Services within the United States of America 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. For TTY support, call 800.446.2398. Outside the United States, call +1.407.458.2479.

Related Documents

For more information, see the following documents in the Oracle AutoVue documentation library:

- *Installation and Administration Manual*
- *Release Notes*
- *Supported Formats List*
- *Product Limitations*
- *Product Variations - Feature Matrix*
- *Performance Related INI Options*
- *DMAPI Manual*

Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
boldface	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
<code>monospace</code>	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.

Introduction

Oracle's AutoVue suite of enterprise visualization solutions provides native document viewing, markup and real-time collaboration capabilities that enable Web-based document review on hundreds of native document types, including 2D/3D CAD, EDA, Office and graphic formats. AutoVue enterprise visualization solutions address the challenge of accessing, reviewing and collaborating on documents, both internally and with globally dispersed teams and partners, in a secure and reliable manner without compromising security or precision. Improved team productivity, reduced errors, and accelerated innovation and time to market are just a few of the business benefits organizations can expect to achieve. This manual explores AutoVue's key capabilities and is designed to help you get the most out of AutoVue's extensive functionality.

Oracle AutoVue

Oracle AutoVue is a viewing and markup application that has been developed for both business and technical users. AutoVue is capable of displaying hundreds of file formats without the authoring application. Supported file types include Text, Office, Graphics, EDA, 2D Engineering Drawings, and 3D Models. Even contents of archive files can be viewed in AutoVue.

NOTE: Although not required, we recommend that file names include their standard file extensions. If the file extensions are not included, AutoVue may require additional time to load a file.

Marking Up Documents

AutoVue has the ability to create markups for all its readable file formats without the document's authoring application. AutoVue creates markups for different formats without modifying the original file. You can attach comments, notes, and drawings to any file you display in AutoVue. This is called “marking up a file”, commonly known as annotating or redlining. A markup is an object or entity that you attach to a file. All markups are saved in a separate file called a *Markup* or a *Markup file*. When you display a file with its *markups*, the markups are overlaid as a layer on top of the drawing. AutoVue provides a variety of flexible, user-friendly entities. To name a few, there are circles, clouds, polygons, and leaders. You can also attach text to entities, insert a note for longer comments, add attachments, or add a stamp such as a company logo. In addition, you can create measurement markup entities and hyperlinks that link between the current file and other associated files or applications.

AutoVue Basics

This section introduces the basics of working in AutoVue; such as starting and exiting AutoVue, the help menu, changing the locale of AutoVue, displaying file versions information, and the AutoVue graphical user interface (GUI). The section on the AutoVue GUI discusses the included menu bars, tool bars, navigation panel, and navigation tree.

AutoVue Version Information

The About dialog displays AutoVue *version and build information*. You can also view the version, build number, and build date of components that are shipped with AutoVue. You can also export this information into a text file.

Viewing Version and Build Information

To view product version information:

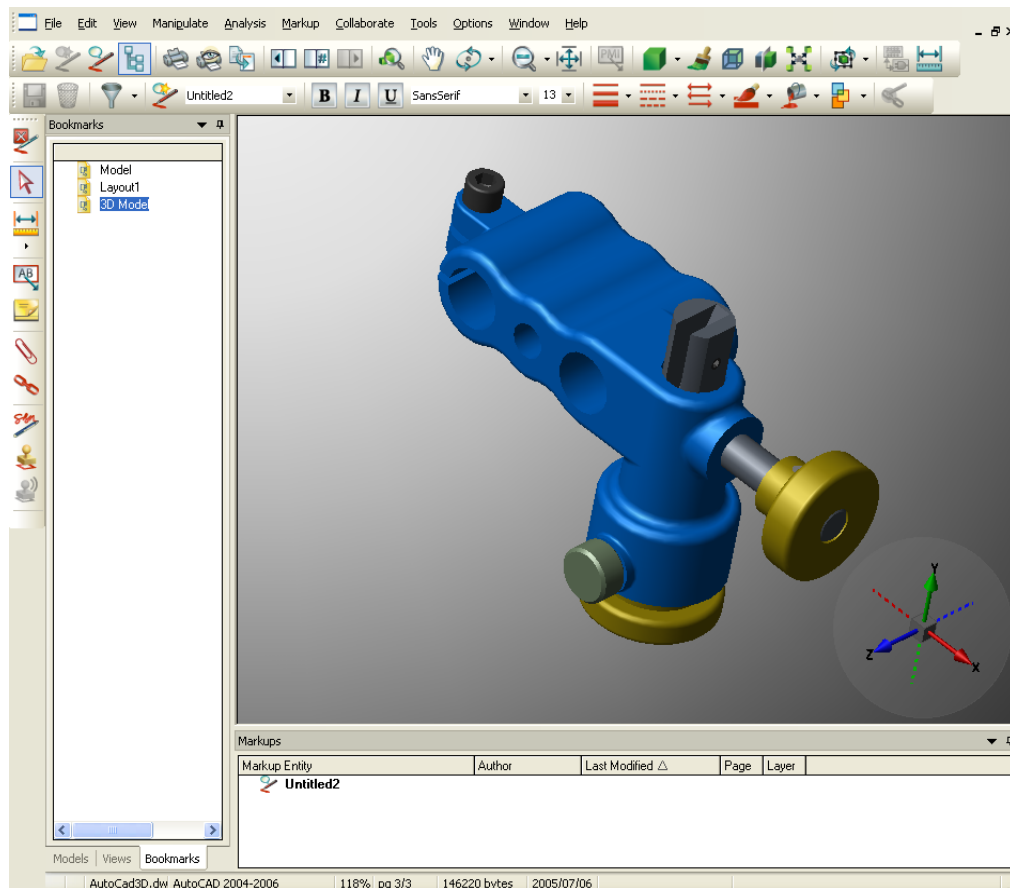
TASK

1. From the **Help** menu, select **About**.
STEP RESULT: The About dialog appears and displays the AutoVue version number and build date.
2. To view version and build information for components, click **Version Info**.
3. To export the version information click **Export**.
STEP RESULT: The Export dialog appears.
4. Navigate and select the directory to which you want to export the list.
5. Enter a file name (the default name is fverinfo.txt).
6. Click **Save**.
STEP RESULT: The list is exported to the specified file.

7. When you are finished viewing the file version information, click **Close**.
 8. Click **OK** to exit the About dialog.
-

AutoVue Graphical User Interface

This section introduces you to the basics of working with AutoVue's *graphical user interface* (GUI). The following image displays the AutoVue GUI for a 3D drawing:



Menu Bar

The *menu bar* is the main access to all the menu commands. The selection of commands changes according to the tasks being accomplished by AutoVue.

Toolbars

AutoVue has three toolbars: *AutoVue toolbar*, *Markup Properties toolbar*, and *Markup Entity toolbar*.

AutoVue Toolbar

The *AutoVue toolbar* displays below the menu bar when you open AutoVue. It is the default toolbar and includes the most commonly used functions when viewing a file—open a file, create a new markup, print, zoom, and many others. Depending on the file that is opened, the toolbar buttons will change. For example, the following image shows the AutoVue toolbar when a 3D file is open:



Markup Properties Toolbar

The *Markup Properties toolbar* displays below the AutoVue toolbar when you enter Markup mode. It includes the available property and formatting options for the markup entities—save markups, change font, fill type, line style, and many others. The following image shows the default Markup Properties toolbar:



Markup Entity Toolbar

The *Markup Entity toolbar* displays by default on the left side of the AutoVue window when you enter Markup mode. It includes all the available markup entities for the opened file.

Depending on the file that is opened, the toolbar buttons will change. For example, the following image shows the Markup Entity toolbar when a 3D file is open:



Navigation Panel

The *Navigation Panel* displays by default on the left-hand side of the AutoVue workspace when you view a drawing. For example, when viewing an EDA drawing, it allows you to navigate through a list of component instances, nets, and the associated pins and net nodes (pins connected to a net) present in the current schematic drawing or Printed Circuit Board (PCB) design.

The columns displayed in the Navigation Panel are determined by the profile of the entity types in the current schematic drawing or PCB design. Lists can be sorted in order to group similar component instances.

You can also use the Navigation Panel to select (highlight) single or multiple components or entities; zoom to a component or entity, and query entity information.

Components		
RefDes	Part Type	Location
U4	BQFPC6...	(29.000)
C1	CAPAE1...	(51.000)
C2	CAPC321...	(7.0000)
C3	CAPC321...	(7.0000)
C4	CAPC321...	(7.0000)
U1	SOP63P...	(50.000)
U2	SOP63P...	(50.000)
U3	SSOP50...	(50.000)
U5	SSOP50...	(50.000)
R4	RESC16...	(7.0000)
R3	RESC16...	(7.0000)
R2	RESC16...	(7.0000)
R1	RESC16...	(7.0000)
RN1	RESCAX...	(9.0000)
RN2	RESCAX...	(9.0000)
RN3	RESCAX...	(9.0000)
RN4	RESCAX...	(9.0000)
J1	MOL-541...	(30.000)
S1	SW_SNA...	(11.000)
S2	SW_SNA...	(49.000)
J2	USBAF	(23.000)
DISPLAY1	7SEGSM	(29.000)

Component Pins		
Name	Location	With
U5.1	(47.1500...	false
U5.2	(47.1500...	false
U5.3	(47.1500...	false
U5.4	(47.1500...	false
U5.5	(47.1500...	false
U5.6	(47.1500...	false

Bookmarks Tab

The *Bookmarks* tab lists links to specific views (Draft views, 2D plans, 3D Views of an EDA design) or pages or bookmarks structure that is saved in files such as PDF.

Bookmarks	
Design	
3D Model	

Components	Nets	Bookmarks
------------	------	-----------

Navigate between the pages or files or views by clicking the appropriate link. Bookmarks lead to various views of CAD files such as AutoCAD file Model Space, the 3D model of a file and associated 2D engineering drafts.

If a plus sign appears to the left of a bookmark, click it to expand and view the lower bookmark levels. If a minus sign appears to the left of the bookmark, click it to collapse the lower bookmark levels.

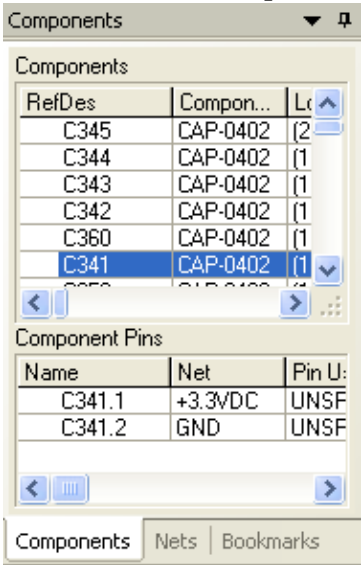
To go to a destination specified by a bookmark, click the bookmark text or the page icon located to the left of the bookmark text.

Components Tab

NOTE: The Components tab displays only for EDA drawings.

The *Components tab* lists component instances and the associated pins. The top portion of the tab lists all the instances of the currently displayed page of the drawing. The lower portion of the tab lists the associated pins for selected instances.

When you select a component, it appears highlighted on the drawing. To select more than one component, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. All the selected components and their associated pins are highlighted.

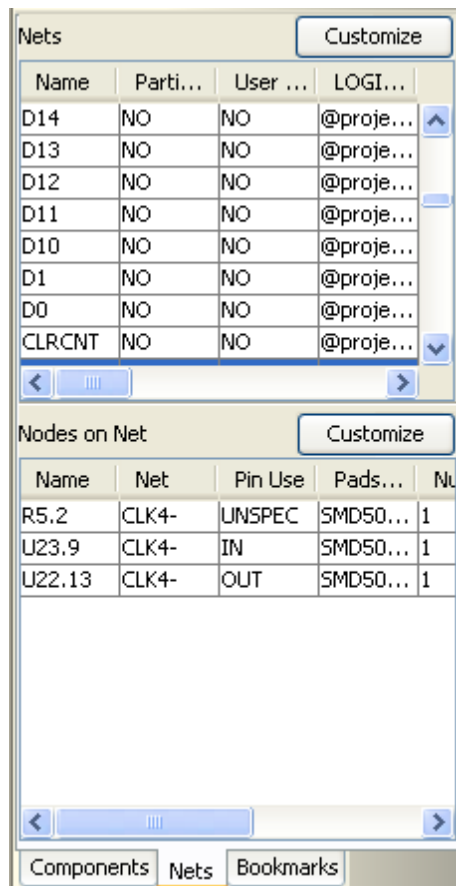


Nets Tab

NOTE: The Nets tab displays only for EDA drawings.

The *Nets tab* lists nets and associated net nodes (pins connected to a net). The top portion of the tab lists all the nets of the drawing's currently displayed page. The lower portion of the tab lists the associated net nodes for the selected nets.

All selected nets are highlighted on the drawing. To select more than one net, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. Alternately, in the Nets panel, you can click and drag in the Navigation Panel list to select multiple nets. The Nodes on Net panel lists the associated nodes for the selected nets.

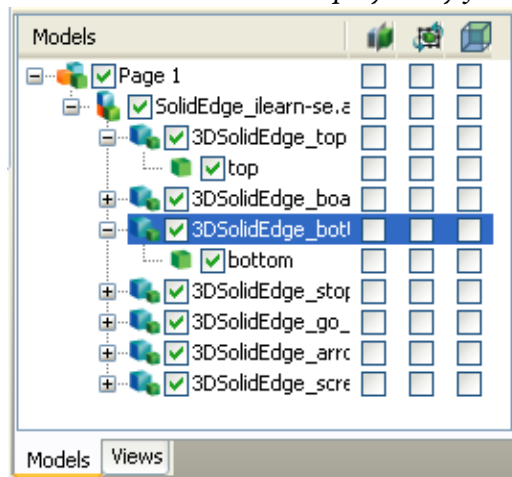


Models Tab and Model Tree

The *Models tab* displays the *Model Tree*. The tree displays the model's hierarchy, inter-relation of different parts, assemblies, and bodies. The tree also indicates if a required external reference (XRef) is missing. With the tree, you can select different parts and modify their attributes such as color, visibility, render mode or transformation.

See "Displaying XRefs" for more information on XRefs.

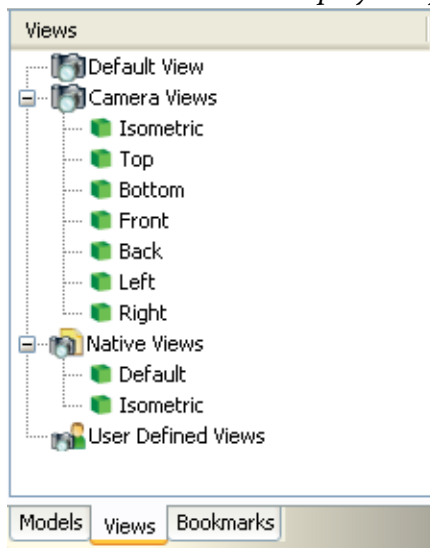
NOTE: The Models tab displays only for 3D drawings.



Views Tab









The *Views tab* lists the defaults, standard, native, and user-defined views. You can switch to a standard, native, or user-defined view, as well as add or delete user-defined views.

NOTE: The Views tab displays only for 3D drawings.



Markup Navigation Tree

When you are in Markup mode, a **Markup Navigation Tree** appears below the workspace. If the tree does not appear, from the **Options** menu, select **Show Panel**, and then select **Markup Panel**.

Markups					
Markup Entity		Author	Last Modified 	Page	Layer
 Untitled2					
	Text	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:06 AM	1	0
	Leader	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:08 AM	1	0
	bnb	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:22 AM	1	0
	Highlight	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:24 AM	1	0
	Box	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:29 AM	1	0
	Line	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:31 AM	1	0

The tree displays a hierarchy of markups or comments created by users. You can navigate through the markups. A set of properties is generated for each markup. You can sort the markups in the tree according to each property by clicking the column headers. These properties are:

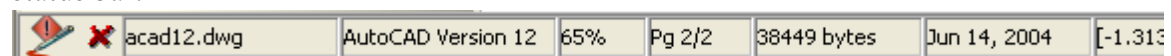
Property	Description
Markup Entity	Type of markup entity created.
Author	The name of the user who created the markup entity.
Last Modified	The date and time the markup entity was last modified.
Page	Page number of the original document on which the markup entity is created.
Layer	Markup layer on which the markup entity is created.




When a markup entity is created, it appears in the tree and the information is recorded and saved in the Markup file.


NOTE: Hover your mouse over an entity to display its author and date properties.


Status Bar


When in View mode or Markup mode, the *status bar* is located at the bottom of the main window. The fields displayed from left to right on the status bar are: marker, current active filename, file type, zoom factor, current page and total number of pages, current active file size, file creation date, and cursor's coordinate position. The following image shows the status bar:



There are three markers that may be present on the status bar: the *Markup Indicator* icon  indicates associated markups, the *Missing Resource* icon  indicate missing resources, and the *Substituted Resource* icon  indicates substituted resources.

The *Markup Indicator*  indicates that the current active file has associated markups. While in View mode, click the Markup Indicator icon to view the Markup Files dialog, then select a Markup file or group of Markup files to open.

The *Missing Resource icon*  indicates that some main resources required to properly display the current active file are not available. To identify the missing resources, click the Resource icon to display the Properties dialog.

The *Substituted Resource icon*  indicates that if a required resource is missing, AutoVue has replaced it with another resource. To identify the substituted resources, click the Substituted Resource icon to display the Properties dialog.

Quick Menus

One of the quickest ways to access options is through *Quick Menus* or context-sensitive shortcut menus. These are the menus you see when you right-click in the workspace, Markup Navigation Tree, and Model Tree. The available Quick Menu options depend on the location where you right-click.


Opening Files

You can open base files and Markup files from the File menu and Markup menu, respectively.

Opening a Local File

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open File** .

STEP RESULT: The File Open dialog appears.

2. Browse to locate the file that you want to open.
3. Click **Open**.

RESULT:


The file opens in the AutoVue workspace.

Opening a URL


You can open a file by specifying the URL.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open File** .

STEP RESULT: The File Open dialog appears.

2. From the left panel, click **Web URL** .
3. In the **File name** field, enter the URL, HTTP, or FTP of the filepath.
4. Click **Open**.

RESULT:


The file opens in the AutoVue workspace.

Opening a File from a Server


To open a file from a server, the server directory must be configured from the AutoVue server-side. Refer to the *Installation and Administration Manual* information on setting up server directories using VueServer.ini.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open File** .

STEP RESULT: The File Open dialog appears.

2. From the left panel click **Server** .

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Files located in the server are displayed in the dialog.

3. Select a file and click **Open**.
-

RESULT:

The file opens in the AutoVue workspace.

Opening a File from a Backend DMS System


When AutoVue is connected to a backend Document Management System (DMS¹) system, you can open a file located in the system from the File Open dialog. Depending on the backend DMS system you are connected to, you must enter your username and password when opening files stored in the backend system.


Refer to Oracle VueLink documentation for more information.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open**.

STEP RESULT: The File Open dialog appears.

2. To open a file from the backend DMS system, from the left panel, click **DMS**² .

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If AutoVue is configured with one DMS system, the name of the DMS would appear instead of DMS. If AutoVue is connected to multiple backend DMS systems, a list of the DMS system names appear when you click **DMS** . Select the DMS from which you want to open files.

STEP RESULT: An authentication dialog appears.

3. Enter the login information and then click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The backend DMS system files appear in the File Open dialog.

4. Select a file and then click **Open**.
-

RESULT:

The file opens in the AutoVue workspace.

Searching for Files in a Backend DMS System

When AutoVue is connected to backend DMS system, you can search for files in the system by entering specific search criteria in the File Open dialog.

-
1. A DMS/PLM/ERP/UCM system is referred to as DMS in this document.
 2. Depending on the type of backend system AutoVue is connected to, the button name will change.


Refer to Oracle VueLink documentation for more information.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Open**.

STEP RESULT: The File Open dialog appears.

2. To search for a file in the backend DMS system, from the left panel, click **Search DMS** .

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If AutoVue is configured with a single DMS, the name of the DMS appears instead of DMS. If AutoVue is connected to multiple backend DMS systems, a list of the DMS system names appear when you click **Search DMS** . Select the DMS in which you want to perform the search.

STEP RESULT: An authentication dialog appears.

3. Enter the login information and then click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The search criteria options load in the File Open dialog.

4. Enter the search criteria and then click **Search**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Alternately, to view all files in the backend DMS system, leave the search criteria fields empty and click **Search**.

STEP RESULT: The file results appear in the dialog. For each AutoVue session, all search results are saved and can be referenced from the File Open dialog as Search Results 1, Search Results 2, and so on.

5. Select a file and then click **Open**.
-

RESULT:

The file opens in the AutoVue workspace.

Streaming Files

AutoVue generates a streaming file when a native file is opened for the first time. The streaming file contains display information for the native file and is quickly accessed by AutoVue. When AutoVue accesses the file again, it loads the display from the streaming file instead of the native file. As a result, the loading time of the display decreases.

If the native file changes or its external resource files change or if an INI option changes, the streaming file is invalidated. In this case, AutoVue opens the display from the native file and generates a new streaming file.

Archive Files

The full *archive file* directory displays in the AutoVue window. It is not necessary to decompress the file. Double-click a file to display it within AutoVue. If you would like to markup an archived file, the file must be made accessible to AutoVue in a decompressed form.

File Properties

You can access the *file properties* from the File menu. The Properties dialog provides information specific to the current active file, such as filename, file size, date of creation, and file type. The file properties that you can view are:

Property	Description
File	Information specific to the current active file, such as filename, file size, date of creation, file type, and x, y & z dimensions.
Resource Information	Resources specific to the current active file, such as text font, shape file, line style, and external reference files.
Native	Custom properties for file types, such as last person who saved the file, signature verification, and author comments.
DMS	If AutoVue is integrated with a backend DMS/PLM/ERP system, a DMS tab appears that lists file attributes retrieved from the backend system.

NOTE: The file properties can vary depending on the file format viewed.

Viewing File Properties




To view file properties:

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Properties**.

STEP RESULT: The Properties dialog appears.

2. To view the file properties, click the **File Properties** tab.
3. To view resource information, click the **Resource Information** tab.




STEP RESULT: All included resources are listed in the Resource Information tab. If a resource that is required to fully display the file is missing, it is listed with the Missing Resource icon . If a resource is found it appears with the Found Resource icon . If a required resource is missing and AutoVue substitutes it with another resource, the Substituted Resources icon  appears.

4. To view native properties, click the **Native Properties** tab.
 5. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog.
-

Navigating a Document with Multiple Pages

AutoVue provides navigation buttons in the AutoVue toolbar to allow you to flip through a drawing (for example, Office, 2D, EDA, or 3D files) that contains multiple pages.

The navigation buttons appear by default. The toolbar contains frequently used tools:

Previous Page , **Next Page** , and **Page Number** .

You can also access the navigation buttons from the **View** menu by selecting **Page**, and then the required navigation button.

Working With 2D Files

When working with vector and non-vector 2D files in AutoVue, you can instantly change how the active file is displayed in the workspace by choosing from a number of different view options. For example, you can zoom into an area of the drawing, magnify a part of the drawing, and rotate a file's orientation clockwise, counterclockwise, or flip a file's orientation along the horizontal or vertical axis.

When viewing 2D vector files, you have access to entity information, views saved in the drawing, and the ability to “intelligent snap” when performing measurements. All the information is obtained by AutoVue by referencing various sources; either internal files or external reference files that are located outside the file.

In addition to the features mentioned, this chapter provides detailed information on how you can modify AutoVue to suit your needs and preferences through a broad range of configuration options.

Searching Text

You can perform a *text search* on 2D vector and text-based documents.

AutoVue provides search options that you can use to customize a search. These options are as follows:

NOTE: *You cannot perform a text search on raster files.*

Option	Description
Match Whole Word Only	Match a complete word.
Match Case	Search for a word or text string with specific capitalization.
Up	Search backward in the document.
Down	Search forward in the document.






TASK



1. From the **Edit** menu, select **Find Text**.
STEP RESULT: The Find dialog appears.
 2. Enter the word or phrase that you want to find in the **Find What** field.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you are searching in a vector file, select a text string from the list.
 3. You can refine your search by selecting **Match Whole Word Only** or **Match Case**.
 4. Click **Find Next**.
STEP RESULT: AutoVue highlights the text and zooms into the text area.
 5. Click **Close** to close the Find dialog.
-






2D Viewing Options

From the View menu, you can change how the active file is displayed in the workspace. For example, you can zoom into an area of the drawing, magnify a part of the drawing, and rotate a file's orientation clockwise, counterclockwise, or flip a file's orientation along the horizontal or vertical axis.

You can access these options from the View menu. The options are:

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Zoom	Zoom Box	Click and drag to draw a box around an object that you want to enlarge to fill the window. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in work-space and select from pop-up menu.
	Zoom In	Zoom in by a factor of 2. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Zoom Out	Zoom out by a factor of 2. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Zoom Previous	Reverts to the previous zoom level. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  . <i>NOTE: You can also right-click the workspace and select Zoom - Previous.</i>
	Full Resolution	Display the file at full resolution. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Fit	Horizontal	Fit the image horizontally in the active window. The vertical dimensions of the image are zoomed proportionally but may be too large or small for the window. <i>NOTE: You can also right-click the workspace and select Zoom - Page Width.</i>
	Vertical	Fit the image vertically in the active window. The horizontal dimensions of the image are zoomed proportionally but may be too large or small for the window.
	Both	AutoVue finds the best fit for the current file with respect to both its vertical and horizontal dimensions. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  . <i>NOTE: You can also right-click the workspace and select Zoom - Fit.</i>
Magnify Glass		Magnify an area of the file that is specified by the cursor location. See “Using the Magnify Glass” for more information.
Magnify Window		Magnify a selected area of a file and displays it in the Magnify Window. See “Using the Magnify Window” for more information.
Pan and Zoom Window		Display a close-up view of a particular area of a file while maintaining a view of the entire file. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  . <i>NOTE: The Pan and Zoom Window option is disabled for text-based documents and spreadsheets.</i> See “Using the Pan and Zoom Window” for more information.

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Pan		Click and drag to move the drawing. To exit right-click. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
<i>NOTE: The Rotate option is disabled for archived files, text-based documents and spreadsheets.</i>		
Rotate	Rotate Clockwise	Rotate the file 90 degrees clockwise. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Rotate Counter Clockwise	Rotate the file 90 degrees counter clockwise. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
Flip	Horizontal Axis	Flip the drawing on its horizontal axis. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Vertical Axis	Flip the drawing on its vertical axis. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  .

Using the Magnify Glass

The Magnify Glass view option displays the magnified area at the cursor location. You can view the details of a selected area of a file while maintaining a full view of the file.

TASK

1. From the **View** menu, select **Magnify Glass**.
2. Move the cursor to the area that you want to magnify.
3. Click and hold the left mouse button.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To view different areas of the file, click and drag the mouse.

STEP RESULT: The magnified area appears in the Magnify Glass.

4. Right-click to exit Magnify Glass view.


Using the Pan and Zoom Window

The *Pan and Zoom Window* view option allows a close-up view of a particular area of a file while maintaining a full view of the file. The Pan and Zoom Window displays a miniature version of the file and has a movable box frame on top of the miniature to indicate the area of the file displayed in the AutoVue workspace.

NOTE: The *Pan and Zoom Window* option is disabled for text-based documents and spreadsheets.

TASK

1. From the **View** menu, select **Pan and Zoom Window**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Pan and Zoom Window** .

STEP RESULT: The Pan and Zoom window appears displaying a full view of the file.

2. From the **Options** menu, select **Dynamic** to view the changes in “real time”.
3. To view a close-up of a specific area of the file in the AutoVue workspace, minimize the frame box by clicking and dragging the frame handles.
4. To view a different area of the file in the AutoVue workspace, click and drag the frame box to the area that you want to view.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you perform a zoom function in the AutoVue workspace, the area displayed in the workspace is highlighted by the frame box in the Pan and Zoom Window.

5. From the **Pan and Zoom** menu, select **Exit** to close the window.
-

RESULT:

The last view performed remains in the AutoVue workspace.

Using the Magnify Window

The *Magnify Window* option displays the magnified area in a window that updates dynamically. You can click and drag the window to any location on your screen, view the details of a select portion of the displayed file while maintaining the display of the full file.

TASK

1. From the **View** menu, select **Magnify Window**.

STEP RESULT: The Magnify Window appears.

2. Move the cursor to the area that you want to magnify in the current active file.

3. Click once.

STEP RESULT: The area appears magnified in the Magnify Window.

4. Right-click to exit the Magnify Window.
-

Working with 2D Vector Files



In addition to all the features that are available for generic 2D files, AutoVue provides the ability to access entity information, access views saved in the drawing, and the ability to “intelligent snap” when performing measurements.

AutoVue references various sources to obtain all data required to completely and accurately display vector files. These sources can be internal to the file—like layers, blocks, and overlays—or external reference files (XRefs) that are located outside the file.

Manipulating 2D Vector Files

The *Manipulate* menu option allows you to manipulate how the current active file is displayed. For example, you can select which layers, blocks, and external reference files (XRefs) to display.

The Manipulate menu options are:

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Visibility Control	Layers	Select and display different layers of a drawing. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  . See “Displaying Layers” for more information.
	Blocks	Select and display a block from a drawing. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  . See “Selecting Blocks” for more information.
	XRefs	Select the XRefs to display in the drawing. See “Displaying XRefs” for more information.
Overlays		Select an overlay to modify. See “Adding an Overlay” for more information.

Displaying Layers

Use this option to configure the layers to display of the current active file.

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

STEP RESULT: The Select the Layers to Display dialog appears listing the layers and layer visibility for the current active file.

2. To sort the list of layers in the dialog, click **Name** to sort alphabetically or numerically, or click **Status** to sort by visibility.
3. Select the check box beside the layers that you want to set visible.
4. Deselect the check box beside the layers that you want to hide.
5. Click **OK** to close the Layers to Display dialog.

RESULT:


The selected layers are displayed

Selecting Blocks

Use this option to select a block to display from the current active file.

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Blocks**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Blocks** .

STEP RESULT: The Select a Block to Display dialog appears listing the blocks for the current active file.

2. From the list, select the block that you want to display.
3. Click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The selected block is displayed.

4. To return to the default display, select **Default View**.
-

Displaying XRefs

AutoVue references various sources to obtain all the data required to completely and correctly display files. These sources can be internal to the file, like layers and blocks. External reference files (XRefs) are located outside the file.

Use the XRefs option to display the external references of the current active file.

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **XRefs**.


STEP RESULT: The Select the External References to Display dialog appears listing the external reference files associated with the current active file.


2. Select the check box beside the XRefs that you want to display.
 3. Deselect the check box beside the XRefs that you want to hide.
 4. Click **OK** to close the Select the External References to Display dialog.
-

RESULT:

The selected XRefs are displayed.

Displaying Details About Resources



Resource information for a file is displayed in the left of the AutoVue status bar. If a file is missing resources the *Missing Resource icon*  appears to the left of the AutoVue status bar. These missing resources can be XRefs, text fonts, linestyles, or shape files. If a missing

resource has been substituted for another resource, the *Substituted Resource* icon  appears.

NOTE: In order to correctly display a file, you must make sure all required resources are provided to AutoVue.

See “Viewing Missing XRef Notification Icon” for information on missing XRefs.




TASK

1. Click the **Missing Resource icon**  or the **Substituted Resource icon**  on the AutoVue status bar.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the **File** menu, you can also select **Properties**.

STEP RESULT: The Properties dialog appears.

2. Click the **Resource Information** tab to display details about missing or substituted resource information required to properly display this file.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: A green check mark  indicates the resources that AutoVue is able to access. A red  indicates that resources are not accessible. A yellow exclamation mark  indicates that a missing resource has been substituted for another resource.

3. Click **OK** to close the Properties dialog.
-

Adding an Overlay

When working with 2D vector files, you can overlay other files over the current active file. You can also adjust an overlay, move an overlay, and scale an overlay by defining the X and Y coordinates and the scaling factor.

NOTE: When working with a raster file, it should be used as the base file because raster formats are opaque and would hide files underneath them.

TASK

1. Open the file that you want to use as the base file for the overlay.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Import File as Overlay**.

STEP RESULT: The Overlays dialog appears.

3. Click **Add File**.

STEP RESULT: The Please Select an Overlay File dialog appears.

4. Select a file to overlay and then click **Open**.

5. To add another file, repeat steps 3 through 4.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can hide/display certain overlays by selecting/deselecting corresponding check boxes in the Visibility column.

6. When done, click **OK** to close the Overlays dialog.
-

RESULT:

The base file is displayed with the selected overlay files on top of it.

Modifying an Overlay

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Overlays**.

STEP RESULT: The Modify Overlay dialog appears.

2. Select the overlay that you want to modify.
3. Click the **Action** that you want to apply to the overlay.
4. Click **Move** if you want to move the overlay. Click a point on the base file where you want to set the lower left corner of the overlay. Click another point where you want to set the upper right corner of the overlay.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: As you select the point to define the position of the upper right corner, you can resize the destination box.

5. Click **Scale** if you want to resize the overlay. Enter the XOffset and YOffset coordinates and/or the Scale Factor.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: XOffset and YOffset are relative to the base drawing and all options are displayed at their current values.

6. Click **Warp** to adjust the overlay. Click a point on the overlay and drag the cursor to where you want the overlay starting point. Click another point and drag the cursor to where you want the overlay to end.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The overlay's size is scaled to accommodate the origin and destination points you defined

7. Click **OK**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To modify other overlays, repeat steps 2 to 4.

STEP RESULT: The changes are applied to the selected overlay.

Removing an Overlay

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Import File as Overlay**.

STEP RESULT: The Overlays dialog appears.

2. Select the overlay that you want to remove.
3. Click **Remove**.

STEP RESULT: The overlay is removed from the list.

4. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT:

The overlay is removed from the display.

Selecting Views

The *Views* option allows you to access different named views of a file.

TASK

1. From the **View** menu, select **Views**.

STEP RESULT: The Select a Named View dialog appears.

2. From the list, select the view that you want to display.
 3. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT:

The selected view is displayed.

NOTE: To return to the default view, select **Default View**.

Specifying a View Point

The *View Point* option allows you to render a drawing from a selected viewpoint.

TASK

1. From the **View** menu, select **View Points**.

STEP RESULT: The View Point dialog appears.

2. Enter the **X, Y** and **Z** coordinates for the view point with which you want to render the drawing.
3. Click **OK**.


RESULT:

The drawing is displayed from the selected view point.

Analyzing 2D Vector Files

With the *analysis* functionality, you can measure entities, compare two files, or view drawing information. These options are available under the Analysis menu.

The following table lists all the options from the Analysis menu:

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Measure		Measure the distance, area, angle, and arc of an entity. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click  . See Also “Measuring in 2D Files” for more information.
Compare		Compare two files. See “Comparing 2D Files” for more information.
Show Drawing Information	Select Single Entity	Displays information for the selected entity. See Also “Viewing Details of a Single Entity” for more information.
	List Tags/Attributes	List block attributes and tags. See Also “Viewing Tags/Attributes” for more information.
	Entity Information	View information of a set of entities. See Also “Viewing Information for a Set of Entities” for more information.

Comparing 2D Files




AutoVue provides the ability to visually *compare* two files and display color-coded comparative data. When you compare two files, AutoVue displays three windows, the first containing the original file, the second containing the file you compared the original against, and the third containing the comparison results.

In the Comparison Result window you can specify whether you want to display only the additions, deletions or unchanged, or any combination of the three. To access these options, right-click in any window and select an option from the pop-up menu.

The comparison results are displayed in different colors to differentiate the results of the file comparison. The comparison options and corresponding colors are:

Option	Color	Description
View Additions	Green	Indicates the something has been added.
View Deletions	Red	Indicates that something has been deleted.
View Unchanged	Blue	Indicates that there is no change.

TASK

1. View the base file in AutoVue.
2. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Compare**.
STEP RESULT: The File Open dialog appears.
3. Enter the file name or browse to select the file that you want to compare with the current active file.
4. Click **OK**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you apply a change from the View menu, all three windows display the synchronized change.
STEP RESULT: AutoVue displays three windows, the first displaying the original file, the second displaying the compare file and the third displaying the comparison results.
5. To access the Compare options, right-click in any of the windows.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To maximize any of the windows, click the  button on the title bar of the window that you want to maximize. To minimize, click the  button. To restore the window, click the  button.
STEP RESULT: A menu appears displaying the Compare options.
6. When comparing AutoCAD files, you can view a file without viewports. To do so, from the View menu, select View Without Viewports.

7. To maximize any of the windows, double-click the title bar of the window that you want to maximize. To restore the window, double-click the title bar.
8. To exit **Compare** mode, from the **File** menu, select **Exit Compare**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Exit Compare Mode**



RESULT:

The original file appears in the workspace.

Align and Scale

You can scale or translate a file in order to compare files accurately. With the *Align and Scale* option you can select to automatically align the files, select points to align and scale, modify the coordinates (XOffset and YOffset) or enter a scaling factor for the second file.

TASK

1. While in Compare mode, from the **View** menu, select **Align and Scale**.

STEP RESULT: The Align and Scale dialog appears.

2. Select one of the following options:

Option	Description
Automatic	AutoVue selects the best fit for the two files.
Select Points to Align	Select snapping points to align to.
Select Points to Align and Scale	Select snapping points to align and scale to.
Custom	You can enter a scale factor as well as X and Y offset values; XOffset and YOffset are relative to the base drawing and all options are displayed at their current values.

3. Click **Apply**.

STEP RESULT: The align and scale modifications are applied to the file in the second window.

4. Click **OK** to close the Align and Scale dialog.

Drawing Information

NOTE: This feature is currently not supported with AutoVue Server running on Unix Platforms.

The *Drawing Information* option is only available with AutoCAD and MicroStation drawings, and is accessed from the **Analysis** menu. The Drawing Information options available are: Select Single Entity, List Tags/Attributes, and Entity Information.

Viewing Details of a Single Entity

The *Select Single Entity* option allows you to view information of a single entity.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Drawing Information**, and then select **Select Single Entity**.
 2. Click the entity for which you want to view information.
 3. If you did not select an entity, a message appears informing you that no entities were found and prompts you to select again.
 4. The Get Entity Info dialog appears displaying the information for the selected entity. The Extended Data (XData) button appears if additional information exists for that entity. Click XData to view the information.
 5. Click **OK** to close the Get Entity Info dialog.
-

Viewing Tags/Attributes

The *List Tag/Attributes* option allows you to view information on block attributes and tags.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Drawing Information**, and then select **List Tags/Attributes**.
 2. Click in the area of the file for which you want to view information on block attributes and tags.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If there are no entities within the selected box, a message appears informing you that no entities were found and prompts you to select again.

STEP RESULT: The Block Attributes dialog appears displaying the attributes/tags for the selected entity.
 3. Click **OK** to close the Block Attributes dialog.
-

Viewing Information for a Set of Entities

The *Entity Information* option allows you to view information of a set of entities contained in a specific area of a drawing.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Drawing Information**, and then select **Entity Information**.
2. Click and drag to highlight the entities for which you want to view entity information.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If there are no entities within the selected area, a message appears informing you that no entities were found and prompts you to select again. To exit, right-click the mouse anywhere in the workspace.


STEP RESULT: The List Entities dialog appears displaying the information of all the selected entities.

3. Click **OK** to close the List Entities dialog.

Measuring in 2D Files

AutoVue provides the ability to perform *measurements in 2D files*. Measurement options vary between vector and non-vector files.

- For vector files, AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to fixed points on the drawing.
- For non-vector files, the Snapping Modes option is disabled. However, you can free snap to any point on the drawing.

AutoVue provides several measure options that you can choose from. You can access the measure options from **Analysis** menu and selecting **Measure**, or from the AutoVue toolbar, click **Measure** .

The measure options are as follows:





Name	Description
Distance	Measure the distance between two points. See “Distance in non-Vector Files” “Distance in Vector Files”

Name	Description
Area	Measure selected area. See “Area in non-Vector Files” “Area in Vector Files”
Angle	Measure the angle between selected points. See “Angle in non-Vector Files” “Angle in Vector Files”
Arc	Measure an arc entity. See “Arc in non-Vector Files” “Arc in Vector Files”

2D Vector Snapping Modes

The available **snapping modes** allow you to click to precise geometrical points on a drawing. For example, if you select **Snap to End-Point** and you move the cursor over an end-point of a line, the end-point will be highlighted by a snap box.

The snapping modes allow you to snap to the mid, center, and end-points of an entity:

Button	Snap to	Description
	End-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near a linear component's end point.
	Mid-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the halfway point of a linear component.
	Center-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the center of an elliptical component.
	Free snap	Allow snapping at any point on the drawing.

NOTE: When selecting a snapping mode you also have the option to select all snapping modes (**All On**) or to turn off snapping modes (**All Off**)

The below table lists snapping locations for certain measurements:

Measurement	Snapping Location
Area	Snaps to a shape on the drawing.
Arc	Snaps to an arc on the drawing.

Measurement	Snapping Location
Angle	Snap to two non-parallel lines.

Distance in non-Vector Files

Use the *Distance* option to measure the distance between two specific points.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears displaying the measurement options.

2. Click the **Distance** tab.

3. In the Measure Distance Units list, select a unit of measurement.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you want to measure the distance along a path, select the Cumulative check box.

4. Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.

5. Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you selected **Cumulative**, continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.

6. Right-click to complete the measurement.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

STEP RESULT: The points are joined by a line. The measured distance, Delta-X, and Delta-Y appear in their respective fields in Distance tab.


7. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.

Distance in Vector Files

Use the *Distance* option to measure the distance between two specific points.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears displaying the measurement options.

2. Click the **Distance** tab.

3. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

4. To select all snapping modes click **All On**. To clear all snapping modes click **All Off**.
 5. From the Measured Distance Units list, select the units of measurement.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you want to measure the distance along a path, select Cumulative.
 6. Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
 7. Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you selected **Cumulative**, continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.
 8. Right-click to complete the measurement.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
STEP RESULT: The points are joined by a line. The Measured Distance, Delta-X, and Delta-Y appear in the Measurement dialog.
 9. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Calibrating Distance

Calibrate the distance measurement.


TASK

1. Measure distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.
 2. From the **Distance** tab, click **Calibrate**.
STEP RESULT: The Distance Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance
 3. From the Units list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
 4. Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.
 5. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
 6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The calibration result appears in the Measurement dialog.
 7. Click **Close** to close the Distance tab.
-

Area in non-Vector Files

Use the Area option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.


TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears displaying the measurement options.
 2. Click the **Area** tab.
 3. In the Area Units list, select a unit of measurement in which to measure the area of the region.
 4. In the Perimeter Units list, select a unit of measurement in which to measure the perimeter of the region.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: In the Net Area Result group, select **Add** to cumulate a net area result of different areas, select **Subtract** to subtract an area from the net area result, and select **Clear** to clear the Net Area Result field.
 5. Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
 6. Continue clicking points on the drawing to define the region you want to measure.
STEP RESULT: Each point is joined by a line. The area and perimeter measurements appear in their respective fields in the Area tab.
 7. Right-click to complete the measurement.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
 8. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Area in Vector Files

Use the Area option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.
 2. Click the **Area** tab.
 3. Select **Between Points** if you want to measure the area between points on a drawing.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Snapping modes are displayed.
-

4. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring: See “2D Vector Snapping Modes” for more information.


Option	Descriptions
All On	Select all snapping modes.
All Off	Clear all snapping modes.

5. Select **Shape** if you want to measure the area of a predefined shape on the drawing.
 6. From the Measured Area Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the area.
 7. From the Perimeter Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the perimeter.
 8. To cumulate a Net Area Result of different areas, click **Add**.
 9. To subtract an area from the Net Area Result, click **Subtract**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Select **Clear** to clear the Net Area Result.
 10. If you selected **Between Points**, click points on the drawing to define the area.
STEP RESULT: Each point is joined by a line. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement dialog.
 11. Right-click to complete the measurement.
 12. If you selected **Shape**, click the edge of the predefined shape.
STEP RESULT: The shape is highlighted and the area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement dialog.
 13. Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
 14. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Angle in non-Vector Files

Use the Angle option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears displaying the measurement options.
2. Click the **Angle** tab.
3. Select a unit of measurement from the Units list.

- Click points on the drawing to define the angle you want to measure.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

STEP RESULT: Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them. The angle measurement appears in the Angle tab.


- Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Angle in Vector Files

Use the Angle option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

TASK

- From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears displaying the measurement options.


- Click the **Angle** tab.
 - Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the angle between three points.
STEP RESULT: Snapping modes are displayed.
 - Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
 - To select all snapping modes click **All On**, To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**. See “2D Vector Snapping Modes” for more information.
 - Select **Between 2 lines** if you want to measure the angle between two lines.
 - From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit.
 - If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points on the drawing to define the angle.
 - If you selected **Between 2 Lines**, click two lines on the drawing to define the angle.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
STEP RESULT: Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them. The angle measurement appears in the Measurement dialog.
 - Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Arc in non-Vector Files

Use the Arc option to define an arc in the drawing and calculate its arc center, radius, diameter, and arc length.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears displaying the measurement options.

2. Click the **Arc** tab.
3. In the Arc Info section, select a unit of measurement from the Length Units list in which to measure the length of the arc.
4. In the Measured Angle section, select a unit of measurement from the Sweep Units list in which to measure the angle of the arc.
5. Click points on the drawing to define the arc.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To take another measurement click **Reset**.

STEP RESULT: The points are joined by an arc. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle, and sweep appear in the Arc tab.


6. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Arc in Vector Files

Use the Arc option to define an arc in the drawing and measure its radius, center, arc length, start and end of angle, sweep, and diameter.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.

2. Click the **Arc** tab.
3. Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points. Snapping modes are displayed
4. Click the snapping modes that you want to select as the points for the measurement.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select all snapping modes click **All On**. To clear all snapping modes click **All Off**. See "2D Vector Snapping Modes" for more information.

5. Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.

6. From the Arc Info Unit list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
 7. From the Measure Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
 8. If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points on the drawing to define the arc.
STEP RESULT: The points are joined by an arc. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog.
 9. If you selected **Arc Entity**, click the edge of the arc that you want to measure.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To take another measurement click **Reset**.
STEP RESULT: The arc is highlighted. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog.
 10. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Calibrating an Arc

TASK

1. Measure an arc in the drawing.
 2. From the **Arc** tab, click **Calibrate**.
STEP RESULT: The Radius Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance.
 3. From the Units list, select a unit of measurement to which you want to calibrate the distance.
 4. Click **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value.
 5. Click **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
 6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The calibration results appear in the Arc tab.
 7. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Working with EDA Files

In addition to all the features that are available for generic 2D files, AutoVue also provides intelligent querying for EDA files; you can create/modify layer sets, generate BOM, verify EDA designs, perform intelligent measurements, analyze nets and components, and much more. For information on the available features for EDA files, refer to the following sections.

Navigation Panel

The *Navigation Panel* displays by default on the left-hand side of the AutoVue workspace when you view a drawing. For example, when viewing an EDA drawing, it allows you to navigate through a list of component instances, nets, and the associated pins and net nodes (pins connected to a net) present in the current schematic drawing or Printed Circuit Board (PCB) design.

The columns displayed in the Navigation Panel are determined by the profile of the entity types in the current schematic drawing or PCB design. Lists can be sorted in order to group similar component instances.

You can also use the Navigation Panel to select (highlight) single or multiple components or entities; zoom to a component or entity, and query entity information.

Components		
Components		
RefDes	Part Type	Location
U4	BQFPC6...	(29.000)
C1	CAPAE1...	(51.000)
C2	CAPC321...	(7.0000)
C3	CAPC321...	(7.0000)
C4	CAPC321...	(7.0000)
U1	SOP63P...	(50.000)
U2	SOP63P...	(50.000)
U3	SSOP50...	(50.000)
U5	SSOP50...	(50.000)
R4	RESC16...	(7.0000)
R3	RESC16...	(7.0000)
R2	RESC16...	(7.0000)
R1	RESC16...	(7.0000)
RN1	RESCAX...	(9.0000)
RN2	RESCAX...	(9.0000)
RN3	RESCAX...	(9.0000)
RN4	RESCAX...	(9.0000)
J1	MOL-541...	(30.000)
S1	SW_SNA...	(11.000)
S2	SW_SNA...	(49.000)
J2	USBAF	(23.000)
DISPLAY1	7SEGSM	(29.000)

Component Pins		
Name	Location	With
U5.1	(47.1500...	false
U5.2	(47.1500...	false
U5.3	(47.1500...	false
U5.4	(47.1500...	false
U5.5	(47.1500...	false
U5.6	(47.1500...	false

Customizing Columns

In the Navigation Panel, you can sort a column, change column order, or hide/show a column. To sort a column, click the column heading.

TASK

1. To change the column order or to show/hide a column, click **Customize**.

STEP RESULT: The Customize Columns dialog appears.

2. Select the check box beside the column or columns you want to display. Deselect the check box beside the column or columns you want to hide.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To show all columns, click Show All. To hide all columns, click Hide All.

3. To change the column order, select the column you want to move, then click **Move Up** to move the column up in the list or click **Move Down** to move the column down in the list.
4. To save the changes you made to the columns, select **Save column settings**.
STEP RESULT: The new column settings will be retained the next time the file is opened.
5. Click **OK**.

RESULT:

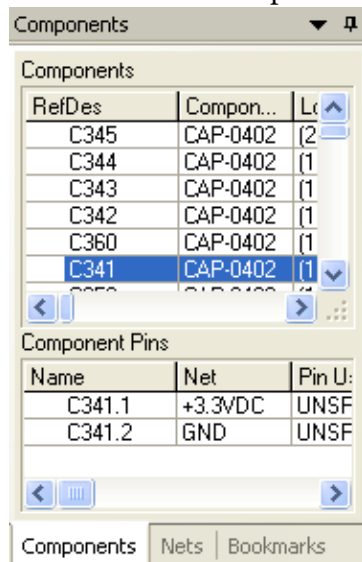
The changes appear in the Navigation Panel.

Components Tab

NOTE: The Components tab displays only for EDA drawings.

The *Components tab* lists component instances and the associated pins. The top portion of the tab lists all the instances of the currently displayed page of the drawing. The lower portion of the tab lists the associated pins for selected instances.

When you select a component, it appears highlighted on the drawing. To select more than one component, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. All the selected components and their associated pins are highlighted.

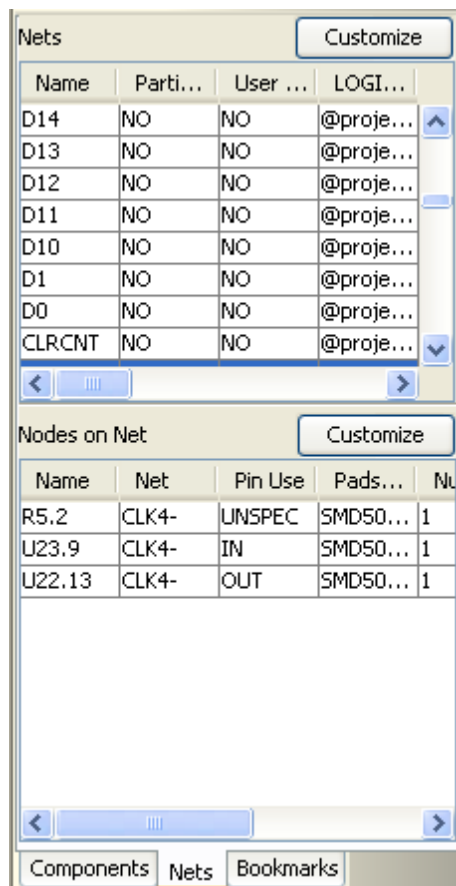


Nets Tab

NOTE: The Nets tab displays only for EDA drawings.

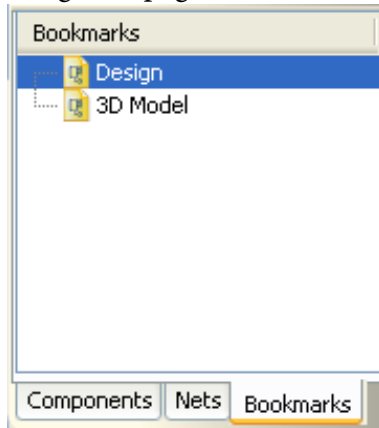
The *Nets tab* lists nets and associated net nodes (pins connected to a net). The top portion of the tab lists all the nets of the drawing's currently displayed page. The lower portion of the tab lists the associated net nodes for the selected nets.

All selected nets are highlighted on the drawing. To select more than one net, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. Alternately, in the Nets panel, you can click and drag in the Navigation Panel list to select multiple nets. The Nodes on Net panel lists the associated nodes for the selected nets.



Bookmarks Tab

The *Bookmarks* tab lists links to specific views (Draft views, 2D plans, 3D Views of an EDA design) or pages or bookmarks structure that is saved in files such as PDF.



Navigate between the pages or files or views by clicking the appropriate link. Bookmarks lead to various views of CAD files such as AutoCAD file Model Space, the 3D model of a file and associated 2D engineering drafts.

If a plus sign appears to the left of a bookmark, click it to expand and view the lower bookmark levels. If a minus sign appears to the left of the bookmark, click it to collapse the lower bookmark levels.

To go to a destination specified by a bookmark, click the bookmark text or the page icon located to the left of the bookmark text.

Selecting Entities

Selecting an entity or entities is often the first step to many of the operations that you perform with EDA files. The following sections provide information on how to select entities from the workspace, Navigation Panel, and the Entity Search dialog. To specify which types of entities you can or cannot select, use the Entity Filter dialog.

See “Filtering Entity Types” for more information on the Entity Filter dialog.

Once an entity is selected, you can zoom to it in the workspace and perform other operations with the EDA file.

From the Navigation Panel

To select an entity from the Navigation Panel, perform the following steps:

To make select, click any component, net, associated pin, or net node in the Navigation Pane.

To select more than one entity, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

The selected entity or entities are highlighted in the workspace. If the selected entity is small, a flash box appears indicating the location of the highlighted entity in the workspace.

See “Zooming to a Selected Entity”

From the Workspace

To select an entity from the workspace, perform the following steps:

Click an entity in the workspace to select it. To select more than one entity, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

The selected entity or entities appear highlighted in the workspace and in the Navigation Panel. If the selected entity is small, a flash box appears indicating the location of the highlighted entity in the workspace.

You can also apply selection filters when selecting entities in the workspace.

See “Filtering Entity Types”

When you hover the mouse over an entity in the workspace, a tooltip with information about the entity’s attributes appears. The tooltip displays whether or not you select the entity.

From the Entity Search Dialog

To select an entity from the *Entity Search dialog*, perform the following steps:

TASK

1. Perform an attribute-based or entity type-based search using the Entity Search dialog.
 2. Select an entity or entities from the Entity Types list or the Attributes list of the Entity Search dialog. To select more than one entity, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
-

RESULT:

The selected entity or entities appear highlighted in the workspace and in the Navigation Panel.

If the selected entity is too small, a flash box appears indicating the location of the highlighted entity in the workspace.

See “Searching Using Entity Search”

Zooming to a Selected Entity

To *zoom to a selected entity*, perform the following steps:

TASK

1. If you selected an entity from the workspace or Navigation panel, right-click and select **Zoom Selected**.
 2. If you selected an entity from the Entity Search dialog, right-click and select **Zoom Selected**.
-

RESULT:

AutoVue zooms to the selected entity in the workspace.

Filtering Entity Types

With the *Entity Filter* option, you can choose to display certain entity types while hiding others. You can also limit the types of entities you can select in the workspace.

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Entity Filter**.
STEP RESULT: The Entity Filter dialog appears.
 2. Under the Visibility column, perform one of the following:
 - Select the check box beside the entity types you want to display in the workspace.
 - Deselect the check box to hide the entity types.
 3. Under the Selection column, perform one of the following:
 - Select the check box beside the entity types that you want to be able to select in the workspace.
 - Deselect the check box beside the entity types that you do not want to select.*ADDITIONAL INFORMATION:* To select all entity types, select the column header check box. Deselect the column header check box to deselect all entity types.
 4. Click **Apply** to apply the changes.
 5. Close **OK** to close the Entity Filter dialog.
-

RESULT:

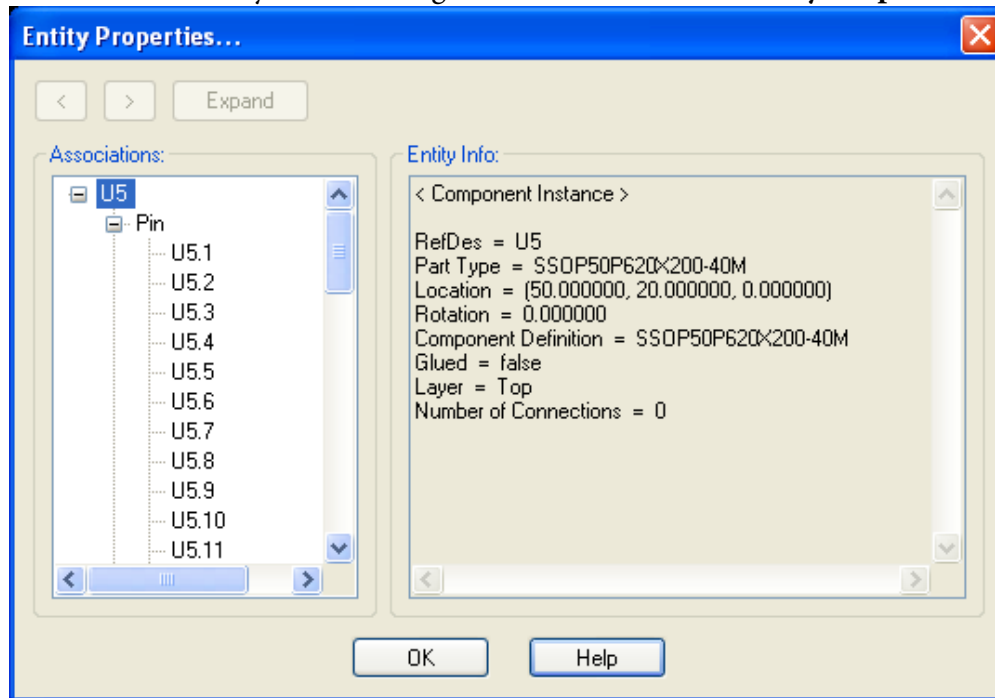
Only the selected entity types remain displayed in the workspace.

When you click in the workspace, only the entity types checked in the Entity Filter dialog will be highlighted.

Entity Properties

The *Entity Properties* dialog displays detailed information about any selected entity in the current schematic drawing or PCB design. To open the Entity Properties dialog, you can

double-click an entity in the workspace, or right-click an entity in the workspace, Navigation Panel, or Entity Search dialog, and then select **Show Entity Properties**.



On the left side of the Entity Properties dialog, a tree displays all the entities associated with the entity you selected. The entity you selected is the root of the tree, and all the associated entities (grouped by their type) are shown as its children.

The attributes of the entity display to the right of the tree, under Entity Info. In the tree, select any associated entity to display its attributes under Entity Info.

You can also view entity attributes in the workspace. When you hover the mouse over an entity in the workspace, a tooltip with commonly used entity information appears. You can turn these tooltips off or on from the Configuration dialog.

See “Configuring AutoVue” for more information on the Configuration dialog.

Viewing the Properties of an Entity

The Entity Properties dialog displays detailed information about any selected entity in the current schematic drawing or PCB design.

TASK



1. Select the entity in the workspace or from the Navigation Panel or Entity Search dialog.

2. Right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also double-click the entity in the workspace to view its entity information.

STEP RESULT: The Entity Properties dialog displays the selected entity and its associated entity.

3. Select any associated entity in the tree to display its attributes.
4. To view all associated entities for any given entity in the tree, select the entity and click **Expand**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To view the entity properties for the previous entity, click the back arrow . To return to the entity properties displayed before you clicked the back arrow, click the forward arrow .

5. Click **OK** to close the Entity Properties dialog.
-

Showing Net Connectivity

You can view the net connectivity of an entity such as a pin, via, or trace with the *Show Net Connectivity* option.

NOTE: *Show Net Connectivity* is disabled when more than one entity is selected.

TASK

1. Select an entity such as a pin, via, or trace from the workspace or the Navigation Panel.
STEP RESULT: The corresponding entity is highlighted in the workspace and in the Navigation Panel.
 2. From the workspace or Navigation Panel, right-click the selected entity, and then select **Show Net Connectivity**.
-

RESULT:

The graphical entities belonging to the connected nets are highlighted.

Displaying the Entity Properties of a Net

You can view the properties of a net via the *Show Entity Properties* option.

NOTE: The Show Entity Properties is disabled when more than one net entity is selected.

TASK

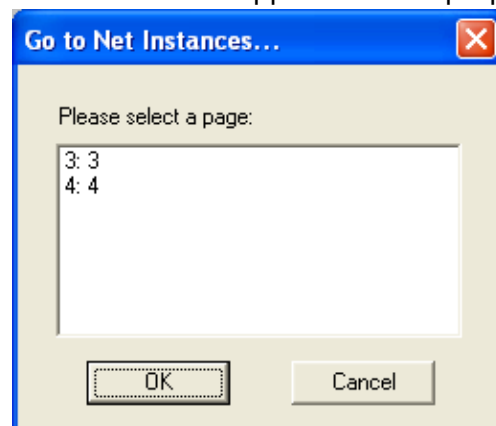
1. Select an entity such as a pin, via, or trace from the workspace or the Navigation Panel.
STEP RESULT: The corresponding net is highlighted in the workspace and in the Navigation Panel.
 2. From the workspace or Navigation Panel, right-click the selected net, and then select **Show Entity Properties**.
STEP RESULT: The Entity Properties dialog appears displaying the properties of the selected net.
 3. Click **OK** to close the Entity Properties dialog.
-

Show Net Instances

You can display the instances of a net in a multi-page file.

TASK

1. From the Navigation Panel, click the **Nets** tab and select the net you want to view.
STEP RESULT: The net is highlighted in the Navigation Panel and in the workspace.
2. From the **View** menu, select **Go to Net Instances**, or right-click the highlighted net from the Navigation Panel or workspace and select **Go to Net Instances**.
STEP RESULT: AutoVue highlights the instance or instances of the selected net. If the selected net appears on multiple pages the Go to Net Instances dialog appears.



3. Select the page on which you want to view the net instance, then click **OK**.
-

RESULT:

The selected page is displayed and the instance of the selected net is highlighted.

Navigating Design Hierarchy

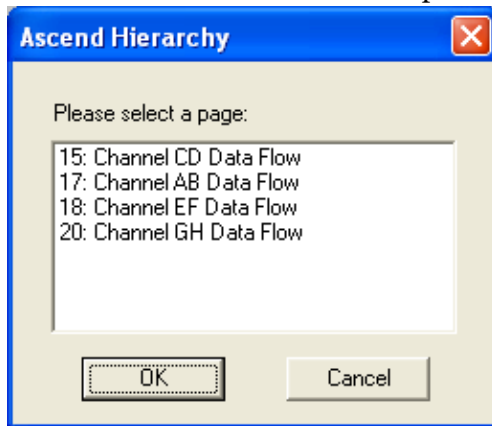
AutoVue supports navigation through the hierarchical structure of a schematic drawing. A hierarchical block in a schematic is a symbol that refers to a child schematic.

Navigating using Ascend Hierarchy

With the Ascend Hierarchy option, you can navigate from the child schematic to the parent page.

On the child page of your schematic's design hierarchy, right-click an entity in the workspace or in the Navigation panel and select **Ascend Hierarchy**. AutoVue returns to the parent page.


If you select an entity that has multiple parents, the Ascend Hierarchy dialog appears displaying the parent pages. Select the Parent page you want to go to, then click **OK**. AutoVue returns to the selected parent page.





NOTE: You can also select the entity in the Entity Search dialog, then right-click and select **Ascend Hierarchy**.

Layers

When working with EDA files, AutoVue lets you view all the physical layers and associated logical layers of the EDA drawing; you can view all layer sets for that file, or create your own. Additionally, from the Layers option, you can manipulate certain layer attributes,

such as visibility, color, and ordering. To display the Layers dialog, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

NOTE: For drawings that do not contain layers, the Layers menu option and button are disabled.

The Layers dialog has a Physical Layers section and a Logical Layers section. You can display and hide these sections by clicking Expand  and Collapse , respectively.

Physical and Logical Layers Sections

The *Logical Layers* section displays the layers in the order they display in the workspace. The Physical Layers section displays the layers in the order they appear in the layer stackup when manufactured.

The *Physical Layers* section displays a matrix with a mapping of physical layer names to entity types. Each row in the matrix corresponds to a physical layer in the board. Each column in the matrix lets you control the visibility of an entity type, such as pin, via, or trace. The entity types that display depend on the entities available in the open file. Select a physical layer to change its visibility, layer order, and color. Select or deselect the entity type of a physical layer to affect its visibility separately from the other entities of the layer.

When you select a physical layer from the Physical Layers section, the associated logical layers are also selected in the Logical Layers section. You can also select individual logical layers from the Logical Layers section, or press the **Shift** or **Control** key to select multiple logical layers.

NOTE: One physical layer can be selected at a time.

The Logical Layers section displays a list of logical layers and the layer attribute options you can modify: visibility, order, and color.

To modify the attributes for both physical and logical layers, first select the layers you want to modify, and then use the settings to make the changes you want.

When you select physical layers and modify settings from the Layers dialog, a message displays at the bottom of the dialog to indicate your last action.

When you are satisfied with the changes, click **Apply** to make the changes in the workspace. You can also create layer sets to save your modified layer settings to reuse them later.


When you open a file, it displays all layer sets for that file. You can choose the layer set you need, or create your own.

Changing the Order of Layers





You can change the order in which layers display in the workspace. Specifically, you can change the z-order of layers.

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers** .

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

STEP RESULT: The Layers dialog opens.

2. If the Logical Layers section is not open, click **Expand** .
3. Select the layer or layers that you want to move. To do so, you can do one of the following:
 - Select a physical layer from the Physical Layers section. Logical layers associated with the selected physical layer are also selected. When you make changes to a selected physical layer, the logical layers associated with it are also affected.
 - Select one or multiple logical layers from the Logical Layers section. To select multiple logical layers, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
4. Click one of the following buttons:
 - Click **Bring to Front**  to move all selected layers to the front in the workspace. In the Logical Layers section, these layers move to the top of the list.
 - Click **Up**  to move selected layers up one layer.
 - Click **Down**  to move selected layers down one layer.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also drag and drop selected logical layers in the Logical Layers section.

5. Click **Apply** to see the changes in the workspace.

STEP RESULT: The file now displays according to the layer scheme you arranged. Also, logical layers are renumbered in the Order column of Logical Layers section.


6. You can now save your changes as a user-defined layer set.
 7. Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog.
-

Modifying Visibility for Physical Layers

Use the Layers dialog to hide or display specific physical layers in the workspace.


TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

STEP RESULT: The Layers dialog opens.

2. In the Physical Layers section, you can show or hide the following:

Option	Description
All physical layers	Click the All column header.
One physical layer	Select the check box to the left of the layer name. You can also select a layer and click Visibility  .
One entity type for all physical layers	Click the column header. For example, click the Trace column header to show or hide all trace entities of all physical layers.
One entity type for one physical layer	Click a specific check box.

3. Click **Apply** to view the changes in the workspace.
4. You can now save your changes as a user-defined layer set.
5. Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog.


ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Check boxes for physical layers can have four states: checked, unchecked, gray checked, and gray unchecked. Check boxes that are checked and gray indicate that the entities of a physical layer are neither all visible nor all hidden. Gray unchecked check boxes that you cannot select indicate that there is no entity of that type for that layer.

Modifying Visibility for Logical Layers


Use the Layers dialog to hide or display specific logical layers in the workspace.



TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

STEP RESULT: The Layers dialog opens.

2. If the Logical Layers section is not open, click **Expand** .
3. In the Logical Layers section, you can show or hide the following:

Option	Description
One logical layer	Select the check box in the Visibility column  .
Multiple logical layers	To select more than one layer, press the Shift or Control key while selecting, and then click Visibility  .


4. Click **Apply** to view the changes in the workspace.
 5. You can now save your changes as a user-defined layer set.
 6. Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog.
-

Changing Layer Color

You can modify the color of any physical or logical layer from the Layers dialog.

TASK



1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

STEP RESULT: The Layers dialog opens.

2. If necessary, click **Expand**  to open the Logical Layers section.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Select the layer or layers for which you want to change the color. You can select a physical layer from the Physical Layers section; logical layers associated with the selected physical layer are also selected. You can also select individual logical layers from the Logical Layers section, or press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting to select multiple layers.

3. After you select a layer, you can do one of the following to modify its color:
 - Click **Modify Color**  and then select a color from the palette. Use this button if you want to change the color of all logical layers associated with a selected physical layer, or to change the color of many selected logical layers at the same time.
 - Double-click a square in the Color column  of the Logical Layers section and then select a color from the palette. Use this option to change the color of individual logical layers.

STEP RESULT: The color of all selected layers changes in the Color column.

4. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

STEP RESULT: The display updates in the workspace based on the changes you made to the layer color.


5. You can now save your changes as a user-defined layer set.
 6. Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog.
-

Sorting Logical Layers


You can sort the list of logical layers in the Logical Layers section by name, visibility, color, or physical layer.

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.


ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

STEP RESULT: The Layers dialog opens.

2. If the Logical Layers section is not open, click **Expand** .
3. Click the column header of an attribute.

RESULT:

Layers are sorted according to the attribute header you click.

For example, if you click the Color  column header, the logical layers in the section are grouped according to their color.

NOTE: To restore the original sort order, click the **Order** column header.

Layer Sets

A layer set is comprised of all the physical and logical layers in the drawing. Layer sets differ in the attributes of the different layers; for example, z-order, visibility, and color. You can also define your own layer sets to control which layers you can view and print.

Viewing Layer Sets

AutoVue lists top, bottom, and default layer sets, as well as any layer set that is stored in the file. You can choose to display any layer set you need. You can also create user-defined layer sets and display them later. To view a layer set, take the following steps:

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .


STEP RESULT: The Layers dialog opens.

2. From the Layer Sets list, select the layer set you want to display.

3. Click **Apply**.

STEP RESULT: The selected layer set displays in the workspace.

4. To restore the default layer set, from the Layer Sets list, select **(Default)**.
5. Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog.


ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also view the layer sets from the Layers list beside the **Layers** button  on the AutoVue toolbar.

Creating User-Defined Layer Sets

You can define a layer set and save it for the duration of the session. The layer set you defined is added to the Layer Sets list in the Layers dialog and to the Layers list on the AutoVue toolbar. By default the Top, Bottom and Default layer sets and any other layer sets belonging to the file are listed in the Layer Sets list.

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

STEP RESULT: The Layers dialog opens.

2. Click **Add**.

STEP RESULT: The Add Layer Set dialog appears.


3. Enter the layer set name.

4. Click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The new layer set appears in the Layer Sets list.

5. To modify the attributes of the new layer set, select one or more layers and change the Visibility, Order, or Color.
 6. Click **Apply** to save the changes and to display the new layer set in the workspace.
 7. To define more layer sets, repeat steps 2 to 6.
 8. Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog.
-


RESULT:

The new layer set appears in the Layers list beside the **Layers Control** button  on the AutoVue toolbar.

Deleting User-Defined Layer Sets

To delete a user-defined layer set, perform the following steps:


TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .
STEP RESULT: The Layers dialog opens.
 2. From the Layer Sets list, select the user-defined layer set you want to delete.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can only delete user-defined layer sets.
 3. Click **Delete**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The layer settings of the deleted layer set remain displayed on the screen until you select another layer set.
 4. Click **Apply** to save the changes.
 5. Click **Close** to close the Layers dialog.
-

Saving User-Defined Layers Sets with Markups

You can save user-defined layer sets using Markup files.

TASK

1. Create custom layer sets.
 2. From the **Markup** menu, select **New**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Markup** .
 3. Create any markup entities that you need.
 4. From the **Markup** menu, select **Save As**.
STEP RESULT: The Save Markup File As dialog appears.
 5. Enter the markup information and click **OK** to close the Save Markup File As dialog.
-

RESULT:

The Layer sets you created are saved with the Markup file. When you reopen the file during a different session, you can view the Layer sets when you open the Markup file.

See “Markups”

Manipulating EDA Views

As with any 2D file, with the *View options*, you can instantly manipulate how the current active file is displayed. For example, you can rotate a file's orientation clockwise or counter-clockwise by 90 degrees, and flip a file's orientation horizontally, vertically or both simultaneously.

See “2D Viewing Options” for more information on View options.

AutoVue provides several ways to change the view size of a selected area of a file, display different views, layers and blocks of the current active file. You can also navigate from one page to another page of a multi-page file.

3D View


For some ECAD formats, AutoVue supports *3D views* of PCB boards.

TASK

1. In the Navigation Panel, click the **Bookmarks** tab.
 2. Select **3D Model** from the navigation tree.
-

RESULT:

The 3D view of the PCB board is displayed in the workspace.

NOTE: *3D view can also be accessed from the **View** menu, selecting **Page**, and then selecting **Next**, or from the AutoVue toolbar and then clicking **Next Page** .*

Cross Probing


Cross probing is the ability to select elements in the schematic and have them mapped to the corresponding components in the layout drawings and vice versa.

The following sections provide information on cross probing between two or more EDA files, displaying the net connectivity when cross probing, and cross probing between 2D and 3D views of the same file.

Cross Probing Between Two or More EDA Files

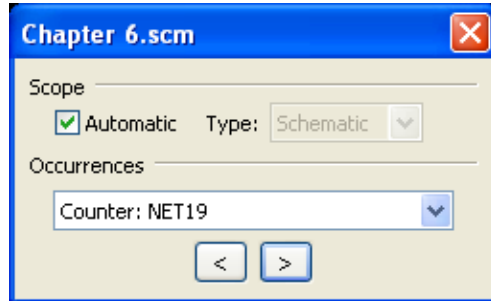
The *Cross Probe* option lets you select entities in the schematic drawing or the PCB design to highlight in all the open files.

TASK

1. Open an EDA file to cross probe.
2. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Cross Probe**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Cross Probe** .
STEP RESULT: The Cross Probe dialog appears.
3. Click **Add File**.
4. In the Open dialog that appears, enter the file name or browse to locate the file you want to cross probe, then click **Open**.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each additional file that you want to cross probe.
6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: Each file you select appears in a new window. A dialog appears for each new window which lets you change the view or page for each file. Each dialog has the Automatic option selected by default. When the Automatic option is selected for each dialog, you see different behavior depending on the files you cross probe.
7. If you cross probe a schematic and PCB, one window automatically displays a 2D PCB and the other window displays a schematic. The same is true if either file contains a PCB and a schematic. Whereas, if files A and B contain both a schematic and a PCB and they are cross probed, one of the files displays the schematic page and the other displays the 2D PCB.
8. If you cross probe two PCBs, one window automatically displays a 2D PCB and the other window displays a 3D PCB.
9. If you cross probe two schematics, both are set to schematic.
10. To change the view of a file in a window, do the following:
 - a Deselect the **Automatic** option in the dialog for the window you want to change.
 - b From the Type list, select **Schematic**, **PCB**, or **PCB 3D View**. These options are available in the Type list only when the views are present in the file.

STEP RESULT: The view of the file changes in the window.

11. To switch between multiple occurrences of a selected component, do the following:
 - a From the Navigation Panel, select a component in one file that has multiple component occurrences in the other file.
 - b From the dialog of the file with multiple component occurrences, select one of the components from the Occurrences list or click **Next** > or **Previous** < to switch between component occurrences.



12. Select any entity in the schematic drawing.
-

RESULT:


The same entity is highlighted in the PCB design.

Cross Probing Between 2D and 3D Views of the Same File

The *Cross Probe* option lets you select entities to highlight in the 2D and 3D views of the same file.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Cross Probe**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Cross Probe** .

STEP RESULT: The Cross Probe dialog appears.

2. Click **Add File**.
3. In the Open dialog that appears, select the same file, then click **Open**.
4. In the Cross Probe dialog, click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The file appears in a new AutoVue window. The views that display in each window depend on the contents of file you are cross probing.

5. If the file does not contain a schematic, one window shows the 2-dimensional view of the PCB and the other shows the 3-dimensional view of the PCB.

6. If the file contains a schematic as well as a PCB, the schematic view displays in one window and the 2D PCB view displays in the other window. In this case, take the following steps to see the 2D and 3D views of the PCB:
 - a In the window's dialog, deselect the **Automatic** option.
 - b Select a different view from the TYPE list. For example, you can switch between Schematic and PCB 3D View.
7. Select an entity in the 3D view.

RESULT:

The same entity is highlighted in the 2D view of this file.

NOTE: *You can select entities in the 2D view or 3D view of the file. The selected entities are highlighted in both open views of this file.*

Showing the Net Connectivity when Cross Probing

To display the *net connectivity* of the design when cross probing, perform the following steps:

TASK

1. Select an entity or entities in any open file.
 2. Right-click and select **Show Net Connectivity**.
-

RESULT:

The net connectivity for the entity or entities that you selected are highlighted in all the files.

Zooming when Cross Probing

When you are cross probing files, you can *zoom* in on the entities you select.

Zoom in on a selected entity or entities:

- When cross probing between a schematic drawing and a PCB design.

- When cross probing between the 2D and 3D views of the same file.

TASK

1. Select an entity or entities in either one of the open files or views.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you are cross probing between a schematic drawing or a PCB design, you can select entities in either file. You can also select entities in any open view when cross probing the 2D view and 3D view of the same file.

2. Right-click and select **Zoom Selected**.
-

RESULT:

AutoVue zooms to the same entities in all the open file or views.

See Also “Configuring Zoom Behavior when Cross Probing” for more information.

Comparing a PCB with Artwork

You can visually *compare* PCB designs or schematic drawings. In Compare mode for EDA files, EDA options such as Select Entity, Entity Search dialog and Entity Filter are available.

TASK

1. Open the PCB file that you want to compare with the artwork.
2. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Compare**.

STEP RESULT: The Open dialog appears.

3. Enter the file name or browse to locate the artwork file you want to compare with the PCB file.
4. Click **Open**.

STEP RESULT: The PCB-Artwork Comparison dialog appears.


5. From the box, select the PCB Physical layer that represents the artwork.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: For example, **TOP** or **BOTTOM**.

6. Click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: AutoVue displays three windows, the first displaying the original PCB drawing, the second displaying the Artwork drawing, and the third the Comparison Result window.

7. To exit Compare mode, from the **File** menu, select **Exit Compare**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Exit Compare** .

RESULT:

The original file appears in the AutoVue workspace.

Generating Bill of Material (BOM)

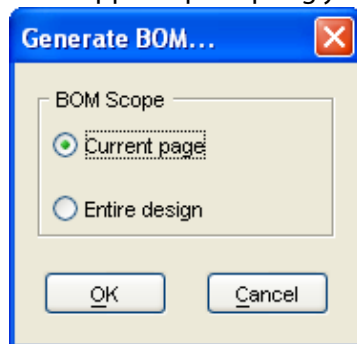
For EDA files, you can obtain a list of the components and parts required for manufacturing the item featured in the schematic drawing or PCB design.

The *Bill of Material (BOM)* report produces a count of the unique components or parts needed for manufacturing. It lists the quantity required, component name, reference designators, value (for resistors and capacitors), size, and descriptions. When determining the uniqueness of a component, the count considers only the attributes chosen for inclusion in the report output. It includes only those attributes that provide the most accurate and unique component quantities.

TASK

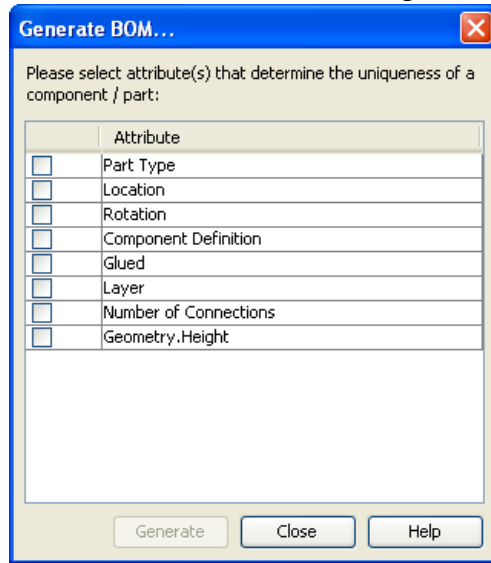
1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Generate Bill of Material**.

STEP RESULT: If you are generating a BOM for a schematic with multiple pages, a dialog appears prompting you to select the BOM scope: Current page or Entire design.



2. Click **OK** after making your selection.

STEP RESULT: The Generating BOM dialog appears listing the attributes of the file.



3. Select the attributes that you want to appear in the report.
4. Click **Generate**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To sort a column by alphanumerical or alphabetical order, click on the column heading.

STEP RESULT: The Bill of Material dialog appears listing the count for each component or part possessing the attributes you selected. There are also columns displaying the values of the attributes you selected.

5. To save the BOM, click **Export**.
6. Specify the directory where you want to store the file, the file name and extension, then click Save.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can specify either .pdx (Product Data Exchange) or .csv (Comma Separated Values) for the extension.

STEP RESULT: AutoVue automatically saves the results in a file with the specified extension.

7. Click **Close** to close the Bill of Material dialog.
-

Design Verification

Design verifications are operations that check the electrical design of a PCB against a set of rules defining physical and electrical design constraints. Performing these checks prevent short circuits and process errors. The types of design rules are as follows:

Design Rule Type	Description
Clearances	The minimum spacing (air gaps) allowed between two sets of entities in the design. These sets can belong to the same type of entity or to different types.
Electrical	Targets certain properties of the nets.
Manufacturing	Targets the physical properties of a particular entity.

Design Rule Checks

For design rule checks that have values, you can set the global unit of measurement. The available design rule checks are:

Type	#	Design Rule Check	Description
Clearance	1	Minimum Clearance (Pad > Pad)	Specify the minimum distance between the pad outline and the outline of its drill hole on all physical layers. <i>NOTE: The two outlines (geometries) are part of the pin (pad) entity but on different logical layers.</i>
	2	Minimum Clearance (Pad > Trace)	Specify the minimum pad to trace clearance and pads on the same physical layer. <i>NOTE: Only the pad outline is considered. Does not take into account traces connected to a pin (pad) on the same net.</i>

Type	#	Design Rule Check	Description
	3	Minimum Clearance (Trace > Trace)	Specify the minimum trace to trace clearance on the same physical layer. <i>NOTE: Does not take into account directly connected traces.</i>
	4	Minimum Clearance (Component > Component)	Specify the minimum component to component clearance on the same physical layer (component top side or component bottom side). <i>NOTE: Only the logical layer that defines the actual outline of the component is considered.</i> <i>A component entity is usually made up of geometries on different logical layers (silkscreen, keepout, and so on.), but only the logical layer that defines the actual outline of the component is considered.</i>
Manufacturing	5	Minimum Annular Ring	Specify the minimum distance between the pad outline and the outline of its drill hole on all physical layers. <i>NOTE: The two outlines (geometries) are part of the pin (pad) entity but on different logical layers.</i>
	6	Minimum Pad Diameter	Specify the minimum diameter of a pad. <i>NOTE: Only applicable to rounded pads.</i>

Type	#	Design Rule Check	Description
	8	Acute Angle (in degrees)	Specify the minimum acute angle between connected traces on the same physical layer. <i>NOTE: Only two traces belonging to the same net are considered.</i>
	9	Minimum Drill Hole Size	Specify the minimum diameter of the drill hole size allowed. <i>NOTE: Only applicable to rounded pads.</i>
	10	Maximum Drill Hole Size	Specify the maximum diameter of the drill hole size allowed. <i>NOTE: Only applicable to rounded pads.</i>
Electrical	7	Maximum Via Count	Specify the maximum via count allowed for a net.
	11	Minimum Route Width	Specify the minimum route (trace) width allowed in the design.
	12	Maximum Route Width	Specify the maximum route (trace) width allowed in the design.
	13	Minimum Route Length	Specify the minimum route (trace) length allowed in the design.
	14	Maximum Route Length	Specify the maximum route (trace) length allowed in the design.
	15	Empty Nets	Select this check box if you want to check for any nets that are not connected to any pin, via, trace and power/ground plane.

Type	#	Design Rule Check	Description
	16	Un-routed Traces	Select this check box if you want to check for any trace segment that is not connected to another trace segment, pin, via on either end.
	17	Single Connection	Select this check box if you want to check for a net connected to only one pin. <i>NOTE: Power and ground nets are the exception.</i>
	18	Short Circuit	Select this check box if you want to check for intersections (on the same layer) of traces that belong to different nets. <i>NOTE: Trace entities will be divided into n sets where n is the number of nets in the design.</i>
	19	Unconnected Pin	Select this check box if you want to check for any pin (pad) that is not graphically intersected with any traces on the same physical layer.

Verifying a Design

The following steps describe how to verify a design.

TASK

- From the **Analysis** menu, select **Verify Design**.
STEP RESULT: The Verify Design dialog appears.
- To enable a design rule, select the associated check box in the **Design Rules** section of the dialog.

3. To disable a design rule, deselect the check box.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can sort the design rules by clicking the column headings for **Enabled**, **Description**, or **Value**.
4. To add a value to the selected design rule, double-click the corresponding row of the Value column and enter a value.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The selected design rule must be enabled to be able to add a value.
5. In the Maximum Violations field, enter the maximum number of results you want to display in the Results list.
6. From the Distance Units list, select the unit you want to use as the unit of measure.
7. Click **Verify**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The Verify button changes to Stop. To stop the Design Verification process at any point, click **Stop**.
When the process is complete, the total number of errors found during the Design Verification process, up to the maximum number specified in the Maximum Violations field appear in the Results list.
8. To view the description of a violation result, select the violation from the Results list.
STEP RESULT: The description appears in the Description field. The description includes information such as the type of violation, the location where it occurs (x- and y-coordinates), the component or entity it affects, and the actual value measured.
When you select a violation result, AutoVue zooms to the entity or set of entities that were affected and highlights them on the drawing.
9. Continue to select violation results to view its description.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to restart a new check.
10. Click **Close** to close the Verify Design dialog.

Exporting the Design Verification Results

You can export the design verification results into a text file.

TASK

1. Verify the design.
2. In the Verify Design dialog, click **Export**.
STEP RESULT: The Export Results dialog appears.
3. Navigate and select the directory where you want to export the results.
4. Enter a file name.

5. Click **Save**.


STEP RESULT: AutoVue saves the design verification results in a .txt (text) or a .csv (Comma Separated Values) file listing each violation result and its description.

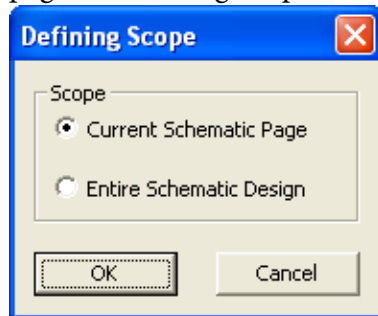
6. Click **Close** to close the Verify Design dialog.
-

Searching Using Entity Search

You can search for an entity in a schematic drawing or a PCB design using the *Entity Search* option. To filter entities, apply attribute, or entity type filters as search criteria. You can select entities from the results list to highlight them in the workspace and the Navigation Panel. You can also export the search results to a .csv file.

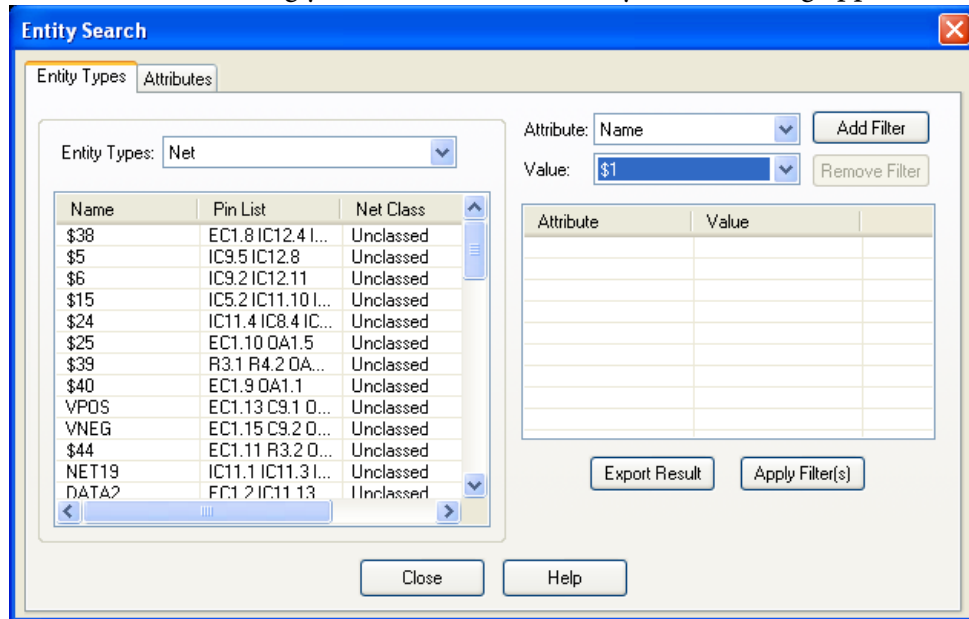
NOTE: If the selected entity is small, a flash box appears indicating the location of the highlighted entity in the workspace.

To open the Entity Search dialog, from the **Edit** menu, select **Entity Search**. From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Entity Search** . If your schematic has multiple pages, a Defining Scope dialog appears.



Select Current Schematic Page to browse through only one page. Select Entire Schematic Design to browse through all schematic pages.

Click OK after making your selection. The Entity Search dialog appears.




Performing an Entity Type-based Search

The following steps describe how to perform an *entity type-based search*.

TASK

1. From the **Edit** menu, select **Entity Search**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Entity Search** .

STEP RESULT: The Entity Search dialog appears.

2. Click the **Entity Types** tab.
3. From the Entity Types list, select an entity type.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To sort the list by attribute, click the attribute column heading that you want to sort by.

STEP RESULT: A list of attributes for the selected entity type appear.

4. If you want to search by attribute, select an attribute from the Attribute list.
5. If you want to search by value, select a value from the Value list.
6. Click **Add Filter**.

STEP RESULT: The selected attribute and its corresponding value appear in the list.

7. Repeat steps 4 and 5 until you have all the filters you want.

8. Click **Apply Filter(s)**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To remove a filter, select the line in the list containing the attribute and value you do not want to use as a filter, then click **Remove Filter**.

STEP RESULT: A list of entities matching the search criteria appear showing the column headers for the entity's available attributes.

9. To save the results, click **Export Result**.

STEP RESULT: The Save dialog appears.

10. Specify the file name and the directory where you want to store the file, then click **Save**.

STEP RESULT: AutoVue saves the results in a .csv (Comma Separated Values) file.

11. To view the properties of an entity, select the entity from the Entity Types list or the Attributes list, then right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.

STEP RESULT: The Entities Properties dialog appears and displays the properties for the selected entity.

12. To show the net connectivity, click the **Attributes** tab, select the entity from the list, then right-click and select **Show Net Connectivity**.

STEP RESULT: The net connectivity for the selected entity is highlighted in the workspace.


13. Click **Close** to close the Entity Search dialog.

Performing an Attribute-based Search

The following steps describe how to perform an *attribute-based search*.

TASK

1. From the **Edit** menu, select **Entity Search**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Entity Search** .

STEP RESULT: The Entity Search dialog appears.

2. Click the **Attributes** tab.

3. From the Attributes list, select an attribute.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To sort the list by Owner, Type, or Value, click the column heading that you want to sort by.

STEP RESULT: The Owner, Type, and Value of the selected attribute appear in the list.

4. If you want to search by owner, select an owner from the Owner Filter list.

5. If you want to search by value, select a value from the Value Filter list.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also enter an Owner Filter or Value Filter in the text box.

6. Click **Apply Filter(s)**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Select an item in the result list and right-click to access options like Zoom Selected and Show Entity Properties.

STEP RESULT: A list of entities matching the search criteria appear displaying the Owner, Type, and Value columns.

7. To save the results, click **Export Result**.

STEP RESULT: The Save As dialog appears.


8. Specify the file name and the directory where you want to store the file, then click **Save**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: AutoVue saves the results in a .csv (Comma Separated Values) file.

9. Click **Close** to close the Entity Search dialog.

Measuring in EDA Files

In EDA files, you can take measurements of distances, areas, arcs, and so on. When measuring, you have the option to “snap” to geometrical or electrical points on the drawing.

From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure** to access the Measurement options. *NOTE: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .*

The following table outlines the available measuring options:









Name	Description
Angle	Measure the angle between selected points.
Arc	Measure an arc entity.
Area	Measure a selected area.
Distance	Measure the distance between two points.
Minimum Distance	Measure the minimum distance between entities.

EDA Snapping Modes

The *snapping modes* allow you to click to precise geometrical or electrical points. For example, when you select **Snap to Pin**, move the cursor over the pin you want to select until

the pin is highlighted, then click. Highlight and click a second pin to measure the distance between them.


The snapping modes allow you to snap to the middle, center, and end-points of an entity, as well as a pin, via, and symbol. The following table outlines the available snapping modes:

Button	Snap To	Description
	End-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the component's end point.
	Mid-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the halfway point of a linear component.
	Center-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the center of an elliptical component.
	Pin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches a pin.
	Via origin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches a via.
	Symbol origin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches the entire component.
	Free snap	Allows snapping at any point on the drawing.
	Nets	Snap to nets.

Measuring Distance

Use the Distance option to measure the distance between two specific points.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.
 2. Click the **Distance** tab.
 3. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
 - To select all snapping modes click **All On**.
 - To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**.
 See "EDA Snapping Modes"
 4. From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you want to measure the distance along a path, select **Cumulative**.
 5. Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
 6. Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you selected Cumulative, continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.
 7. Right-click to complete the measurement.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To make another measurement, click **Reset**.
STEP RESULT: The points are joined by a line. The measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y and the "Manhattan Distance" appear in the Measurement dialog.
 8. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Calibrating Distance

Calibrate the distance measurement.

TASK




1. Measure distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.
 2. From the **Distance** tab, click **Calibrate**.
STEP RESULT: The Distance Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance
 3. From the Units list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
-

4. Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.
 5. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
 6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The calibration result appears in the Measurement dialog.
 7. Click **Close** to close the Distance tab.
-

Measuring Minimum Distance

Use the Minimum Distance option to measure the minimum distance between entities. The available entities for snapping are nets, pins, vias, and traces.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.
2. Click the **Min. Distance** tab.
3. Select **Set 1**  to select the entities that you want to measure from.
4. Select the snapping modes that you want to select as the entities for the measurement.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you click **Select Nets**, you cannot select any other type of entity. See “EDA Snapping Modes”
5. Click the first set of entities on the drawing.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To clear the last set of entities you selected, click **Clear Set**.
STEP RESULT: The entities are highlighted.
6. Select **Set 2**  to select the entities that you want to measure to.
7. Click the second set of entities on the drawing.
STEP RESULT: The entities are highlighted in a different color.
8. From the Measured Min. Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Select **Zoom to Result**, if you want to zoom into the measurement on the drawing.

9. Click **Compute**.

STEP RESULT: The minimum distance from the first set of entities to the second set is highlighted by a line. The minimum measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y, and the Manhattan Distance appear in the Measure Min. Distance section of the dialog.


10. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.

Measuring Area

Use the Area option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.

2. Click the **Area** tab.
3. Select **Between Points** if you want to measure the area between points on a drawing. The snapping modes are displayed.
4. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
5. Select **Shape** if you want to measure the area of a predefined shape on the drawing; the snapping modes are disabled.
6. From the Measured Area Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the area.
7. From the Perimeter Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the perimeter.
8. In the Net Area Result section of the dialog, select **Add** to cumulate a net area result of different areas.
9. To subtract an area from the Net Area Result, select **Subtract**.
10. Select **Clear** to clear the Net Area Result.
11. If you selected **Between Points**, click points on the drawing to define the area.

STEP RESULT: Each point is joined by a line. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement dialog.

12. If you selected **Shape**, click the edge of the predefined shape that you want to measure.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

STEP RESULT: The shape is highlighted. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement dialog.


13. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Measuring an Angle

Use the Angle option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.

2. Click the **Angle** tab.
3. Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the angle between three points.

STEP RESULT: Snapping modes are displayed.

4. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
 - To select all snapping modes click **All On**.
 - To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**.See "EDA Snapping Modes"
5. Select **Between 2 Lines** if you want to measure the angle between two lines.
6. From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
7. If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the angle.
8. If you selected **Between 2 Lines**, click two lines to define the angle.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To take another measurement click **Reset**.


STEP RESULT: Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them. The angle measurement appears in the Measurement dialog.

9. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Measuring an Arc

Use the Arc option to define or select an arc in the drawing and measure its arc length, start and end of angle, sweep, radius, center and diameter.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.
 2. Click the **Arc** tab.
 3. Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points. Snapping modes are displayed.
 4. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
 - To select all snapping modes click **All On**.
 - To deselect all snapping modes click **All Off**.
 See "EDA Snapping Modes"
 5. Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.
 6. From the Arc Information section, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance of the arc.
 7. From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
 8. If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the arc.
STEP RESULT: The points are joined by an arc. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog.
 9. If you selected **Arc Entity**, click the edge of the arc that you want to measure.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To take another measurement click **Reset**.
STEP RESULT: The arc is highlighted. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog.
 10. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Calibrating an Arc

TASK

1. Measure an arc in the drawing.
 2. From the **Arc** tab, click **Calibrate**.
STEP RESULT: The Radius Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance.
-

3. From the Units list, select a unit of measurement to which you want to calibrate the distance.
 4. Click **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value.
 5. Click **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
 6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The calibration results appear in the Arc tab.
 7. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Working with 3D Files

From AutoVue's 3D mode, you have many ways in which to manipulate the model. For example, you can select model parts to transform independently from the rest of the model, as well as modify the selected model part's visibility and attributes. 3D mode also gives you the ability to perform an entity search and compute mass properties, and it allows you to import 3D models into the current window and export files to other formats. Additionally, the Global Axes inform you of where the X, Y and Z axes are positioned throughout all the operations you perform in AutoVue.

The *Perspective* option shows objects in three dimension with distances, planes and curved surfaces adjusted to give a sense of depth. You have lighting options where you can adjust the overall lighting surrounding a model or just its source light.

You can also customize operations to suit your needs. For example, you can create and save your own views. Define cross sections and cut-throughs of 3D models. Create a customized three-axis coordinate system that you can set as the active coordinate system for your 3D files.

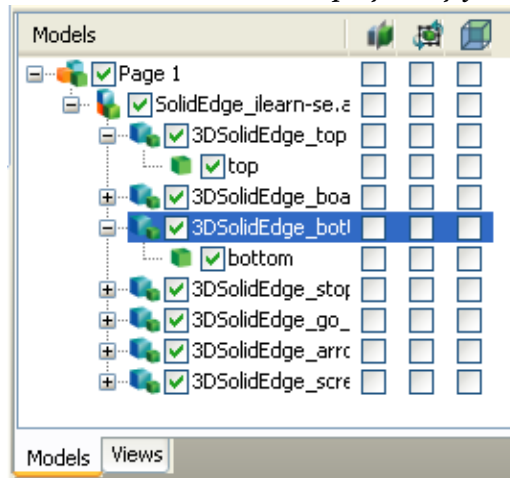
There are also features like Bill of Material (BOM), Interference Checking and Product and Manufacturing Information (PMI) Filtering.

Models Tab and Model Tree

The *Models tab* displays the *Model Tree*. The tree displays the model's hierarchy, inter-relation of different parts, assemblies, and bodies. The tree also indicates if a required external reference (XRef) is missing. With the tree, you can select different parts and modify their attributes such as color, visibility, render mode or transformation.

See "Displaying XRefs" for more information on XRefs.

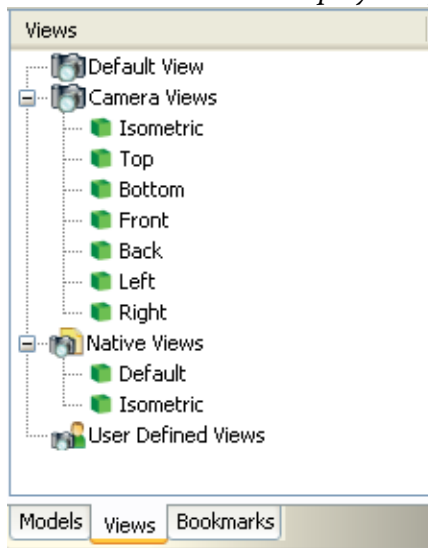
NOTE: The Models tab displays only for 3D drawings.



Views Tab

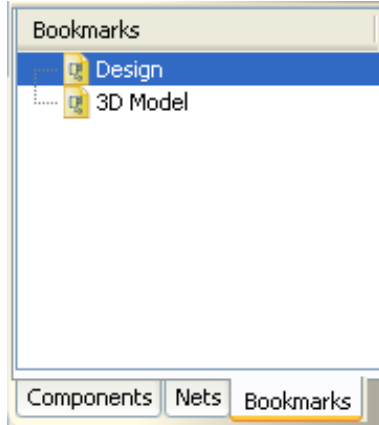
The *Views tab* lists the defaults, standard, native, and user-defined views. You can switch to a standard, native, or user-defined view, as well as add or delete user-defined views.

NOTE: The Views tab displays only for 3D drawings.



Bookmarks Tab

The *Bookmarks* tab lists links to specific views (Draft views, 2D plans, 3D Views of an EDA design) or pages or bookmarks structure that is saved in files such as PDF.



Navigate between the pages or files or views by clicking the appropriate link. Bookmarks lead to various views of CAD files such as AutoCAD file Model Space, the 3D model of a file and associated 2D engineering drafts.

If a plus sign appears to the left of a bookmark, click it to expand and view the lower bookmark levels. If a minus sign appears to the left of the bookmark, click it to collapse the lower bookmark levels.

To go to a destination specified by a bookmark, click the bookmark text or the page icon located to the left of the bookmark text.

Global Axes

By default, there is a three-axis representation in the lower left corner of the workspace. The **X-axis** is red, the **Y-axis** is green and the **Z-axis** is blue. When transforming a model or defining a viewpoint, all operations are applied with respect to these axes.

Selecting Model Parts

You can select model parts from the *Model Tree* or from the workspace to highlight them in the Model Tree and on the model. You can also select a model part and have all its identical parts appear highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.

You can also configure the **Selection Highlight**.

Select Model Parts from the Workspace

TASK

1. Select a part or parts on the model in the workspace.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
 2. To select the parent entities of a selected part, press the **Shift** key and select the part again.
STEP RESULT: A pop-up appears listing the parent entities of the selected part. Select an entity from the pop-up list. The selected part or parts appear highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.
 3. To select a group of parts, from the **Edit** menu, select **Select**, then click and drag the mouse around the parts.
-

RESULT: The entities within the box are selected and highlighted in the Model Tree. If the selected entity is hidden in the Model Tree, the Model Tree expands to display the selected entity.

Selecting All Identical Parts of a Model

Select a model part in the workspace or from the Model Tree.

Right-click and select **Select Identical Parts**.

All identical parts are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree. If there are no identical parts found, a message appears indicating “No identical parts found”. You can also select sub-assemblies and **Select Identical Parts** to display all identical sub-assemblies.

Re-Centering

The *Re-center* option repositions the model back to the center of the View window. You can use a model part as a central reference point to reposition a model. You can select several model parts to use as one collective central reference point.

Re-Centering a Model to a Selected Model Part

TASK

1. Select the model part or parts that you want to re-center.
 2. From the **View** menu, select **Re-Center**, and then select **Selected**.
-

RESULT: The model is repositioned using the selected model part or parts as the central reference point. The **Selected** option is only available when one or more model parts are selected.

Re-Center All

The **Re-Center All** option repositions the entire model back to the center of the AutoVue workspace.

TASK

1. From the **View** menu, select **Re-Center**, and then select **All**.

STEP RESULT: The model is repositioned to the center of the workspace.

Entity Reference

You can use an entity as a central reference point to reposition a model. The entities are as follows:

Entity	Description
Vertex	All vertices are highlighted. Select a vertex to use as the central reference point. A snap box appears when moving the mouse over a vertex.

Entity	Description
Edge	All edges are highlighted. Select an edge to use as the central reference point. A snap box appears when moving the mouse over an edge.
Midedge	Highlight all edges in the model. Select a mid-edge to use as the central reference point.
Arc Center	Highlight all arcs and ellipses in the model. Select an arc center to use as the central reference point. A snap box appears when moving the mouse over an arc or ellipses, indicating the center of the arc.
Face	Select a face to use as the central reference point. When moving the cursor along a model face, the face is highlighted.

Re-Centering a Model to an Entity

To re-center a model to an entity, perform the following:

TASK

1. From the **View** menu, select **Re-Center**, and then select **Entity**.
STEP RESULT: The Re-Center dialog appears.
 2. Select the entity that you want to use as the central reference point.
STEP RESULT: All instances of the entity are highlighted.
 3. Click an instance of the entity.
STEP RESULT: The model is repositioned using the selected entity as the central reference point.
 4. Close the Re-Center dialog.
-

Model Tree

The *Model Tree* displays the model's hierarchy, inter-relation of different parts, assemblies, bodies, and missing XRef notifications. With the tree, you can select different parts and modify their attributes such as color, visibility, render mode or transformation.

Expanding/Collapsing the Model Tree

You can expand the Model Tree to display child entities of a selected node or nodes.

You can also configure the level you want to expand the Model Tree.

TASK



1. Click the **Models** tab.
2. From the Model Tree, select the node or nodes that you want to expand, then right-click and select **Expand All Children**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one node, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

STEP RESULT: The selected entities are highlighted. The Model Tree expands displaying the child entities of the selected nodes.

3. To collapse a node, select the node, then right-click and select **Collapse All Children**.

STEP RESULT: The Model Tree collapses the selected node.


RESULT: The Model Tree collapses the selected node. You can also expand a node by clicking . To collapse a node click .

Viewing Missing XRef Notification Icon

If the loaded drawing is missing XRefs, the **Missing XRef Notification** icon  appears in the Model Tree to the left of the missing XRef. To view XRefs are missing, do the following:


See Also “Displaying Details About Resources”

TASK

1. From the status bar, click the **Missing Resource** icon .

STEP RESULT: The Properties dialog appears. You can also view the missing XRef from the **File** menu, and then selecting **Properties**.

2. Click the **Resource Information** tab.

STEP RESULT: Any missing XRefs appear in the External Reference File Reference File Resources section of the dialog and are preceded by a .

3. Click **OK** to close the dialog.
-

Selecting Model Parts from the Model Tree

TASK

1. Click the **Models** tab.
2. Select the part or parts from the Model tree.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

RESULT: The selected part or parts appear highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.

Hiding Model Parts

You can hide specific parts of a model or display specific parts and hide the rest of the model.

TASK

1. Select the part or parts on the model or from the Model Tree.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

STEP RESULT: The selected part or parts appear highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.

2. To hide the selected part or parts, right-click a selected part on the model or from the Model Tree and select **Hide**.

STEP RESULT: The selected part or parts are hidden on the model.

3. To display the selected part or parts and hide the rest of the model, right-click a selected part on the model or from the Model Tree and select **Hide Rest**.

STEP RESULT: The selected parts are displayed in the workspace and the rest of the model is hidden.

Creating 3D Mockups

You can import other 3D Models into the current active file.

The imported files must be 3D and have similar dimensions.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Import File for Mockup**.

STEP RESULT: The Mockup dialog appears.

2. Click **Add**.

STEP RESULT: The Open dialog appears.

3. Enter the file name or browse to locate the file you want to import.

4. Click **Open**.

STEP RESULT: The file appears in the Mockup dialog. To import more than one file, repeat steps 2 to 4.

5. The **Enter Markup Mode** check box is selected by default. If you deselect it, any modifications you make to the mockup are not saved.

6. Click **OK** to close the Mockup dialog.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Once open, you can position these models in the desired manner using the Transformation tool, or align the models using Part Alignment, or run Interference Checks.

RESULT:

The file or files you imported appear in the workspace.

See “Transforming a 3D Model”

“Part Alignment”

“Performing an Interference Check”

Deleting Models from a Mockup

The following steps explain how to delete models from a mockup.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Import File for Mockup**.

STEP RESULT: The Mockup dialog appears.

2. Select the file or files that you want to remove.







3. Click **Remove**.
STEP RESULT: The file or files are removed from the list.
4. Click **OK** to close the Mockup dialog.




RESULT: The file or files disappear from the workspace.




Manipulating Display of a 3D Model

AutoVue provides the flexibility to manipulate the display of a 3D model. You can rotate, scale, or translate a model or any selection of model parts. You can also navigate from one page to another page of a multi-page file.

You can access these options from the **View** menu. The options are:

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Zoom	Zoom In	Zoom in by a factor of 2. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Zoom Out	Zoom out by a factor of 2. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Previous	Return to the previous zoom level. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in workspace and then select from the menu.
	Selected	Resize the object so that the objects selected fill the window.
	Dynamic Zoom	Click and drag the cursor up to zoom in or down to zoom out. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Zoom Box	Click and drag to draw a box around an object that you want to enlarge to fill the window. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in workspace and then select from the menu.
Zoom Fit		Resize object to fit window. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in workspace and then select from the menu.

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Pan		Click and drag to reposition the model, then release the mouse button. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in the workspace and then select from the menu.
Rotate		Click and drag to rotate the model on all three axes, then release the mouse button. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  or right-click in workspace and then select from the menu.
Spin		Click and drag the object in the direction you want the object to spin continuously, then release mouse button. To stop the object from spinning, click once anywhere in the workspace. The spin velocity is determined by the speed at which you drag the mouse. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
Re-Center	All	Reposition the entire model back to the center of the AutoVue workspace. See “Re-Centering”
	Selected	Only available when one or more model parts are selected. The selected part or parts are considered as the central reference point by which the model is repositioned. See “Re-Centering”
	Entity	Select a model part or entity as a central reference point to reposition a model. See “Re-Centering”
Default View		Displays view of the model when it is initially loaded. You can also right-click in the workspace and then select from the menu. See “3D Views”
Camera Views		Displays different views of 3D models: Isometric, Top, Bottom, Front, Back, Left, Right, and View Points. You can also right-click in the workspace and then select from the menu. See “3D Views”
Views		Access native views of the model or access and create your own views. You can also right-click in the workspace and then select from the menu. See “3D Views”

Menu	Sub-Menu	Description
Page	Next Page	Go to the next page of a multi-page file. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Previous Page	Go to the previous page of a multi-page file. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .
	Page Number	Go to the specified page of a multi-page file. From the Autovue toolbar, you can also click  .

Display Attributes

AutoVue provides several different render methods to display a 3D CAD model. You can also adjust the degree of transparency, change color, or visibility to suit your preferences.

Render Modes

The choice of render mode varies between the level of detail and the render speed of the model. For example, a shaded model is three-dimensional and highly detailed but requires more time to render. The different render modes are as follows:


Method	Description
Wireframe	A skeletal model constructed using lines and curves that represent the model's "true" edges. All internal lines are visible.
Shaded	A solid model constructed of planes and surfaces. These surfaces are shaded to increase the illusion of three dimensions.
Hidden Line	A wireframe constructed with all internal lines hidden.
Silhouette	A wireframe constructed with all internal lines visible but including additional silhouette edges. These are not "true" edges but help to visualize the model.
Wire Polygons	A skeletal model constructed of unfilled polygons.
Shaded Wire	An outlined solid model constructed of planes and surfaces. The outline is a solid line and the model's surfaces are shaded to increase the illusion of three dimensions.

Method	Description
Reflective	A solid model constructed of planes and surfaces. These surfaces are have a reflective sheer to accentuate the model's shadows.
Reflective Wire	An outlined solid model constructed of planes and surfaces. The outline is a solid line and the model's surfaces have a reflective sheer to the model's shadows.

Changing the Render Mode

To change the render mode of the selected model or model parts, perform the following:

TASK

- From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Rendering**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Render Mode** .
STEP RESULT: Render mode options are listed.
- Select a render mode from the list.
STEP RESULT: The selected render mode is highlighted.

RESULT: The model or selected model parts change to the selected render mode.

Changing the Visibility

You can choose to show or hide selected parts; this can be done from either the Model Tree or the workspace.

From the Model Tree, deselect the check box beside the model part or parts that you want to hide.

Conversely, select the check box beside the model parts that you want to set visible.

RESULT:

The selected model parts appear or disappear from the model.

NOTE: You can also hide model parts by selecting them on the model or from the Model Tree, then right-clicking and selecting **Hide**. Selecting **Hide Rest** displays the selected model parts and hides the rest of the model.

Changing Model Color

You can change the color of a specific model part or selected model parts.

TASK

1. Select the model or model parts whose color you want to change.
2. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Color**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If no part is selected, the change is applied to the entire model.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Color** .

STEP RESULT: The Color dialog appears.

3. Select the desired color.
4. Click **Apply**.

RESULT: The selected part or parts change to the selected color.


NOTE: To set the model color to its default color, repeat steps 1 to 2 and click **Reset** in the Color dialog.

Adjusting the Transparency

You can adjust the degree of transparency of a model. This function only applies to shaded and shaded wire models.

TASK

1. Select the model or model parts whose transparency you want to adjust.
2. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Transparency**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Transparency** .

STEP RESULT: The Set Transparency dialog appears.

3. To adjust the transparency, move the slider left or right.
4. Select **Apply Dynamically** if you want the transparency to simultaneously change with the movement of the slider.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Alternatively, to adjust the transparency level, you can enter in the **Value** field a value from 0 to 1. Where **0** renders the model opaque (default state) and **1** renders it transparent.

5. Click **Close** to apply the changes and close the Set Transparency dialog.

Light Settings

The default light setting consists of a white light at the 10 o'clock position with respect to the model. In the Lighting dialog, it appears as a grey ball of white light at the 10 o'clock position along the circumference of the larger sphere.

Ambient lighting is the overall lighting that surrounds an object. It provides constant illumination to every surface of the model. This type of lighting is particularly effective as a fill-light for surfaces not directly illuminated by a directional light source. You can set the intensity or source position; too high a setting tends to saturate the image and reduce its clarity.

Using the **Directional lighting** option, you can adjust the position of the light source on an object.

You can make the following modifications via the Lighting dialog:

- Set the intensity and source position of the ambient light.
- Set the direction of light.
- Add and remove a light source.
- Change light color, brightness, and specularity.

Setting Ambient Lighting

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Lighting**.

STEP RESULT: The Lighting dialog appears.

2. Click and drag the **Ambient Light** sliding bar until you achieve the desired lighting.

STEP RESULT: The lighting automatically changes with the movement of the sliding bar. The **Custom** option is selected when you modify the ambient light.

3. To set the ambient lighting to its default setting, select **Default**.
 4. Click **Close** to close the Lighting dialog.
-

Setting Directional Lighting

Setting the directional lighting adjusts the position of the light source on the model. You can also add a new light source.

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Lighting**.
STEP RESULT: The Lighting dialog appears.
 2. To change the direction of the light, click and drag the small ball until you achieve the desired lighting.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also drag the white ball outside of the large ball.
STEP RESULT: The direction of the light reflected on the 3D model automatically changes with the movement of the white ball. The **Custom** option is selected when you adjust the position of the light.
 3. To set the light direction to its default setting, select **Default**.
 4. Click **Close** to close the Lighting dialog.
-

Adding a New Light Source

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Lighting**.
STEP RESULT: The Lighting dialog appears.
 2. Select the **Two lights** option.
STEP RESULT: A new light source appears as a black ball in the 5 o'clock position.
 3. To add more light sources, right-click inside the square surrounding the ball and select **Create New Light Source** from the pop-up menu.
STEP RESULT: The Custom option is selected and the new light source appears as a white ball.
 4. Click and drag the small ball until you achieve the desired lighting.
 5. To restore the light source to its default setting, select **Default**.
 6. Click **Close** to close the Lighting dialog.
-

RESULT:

NOTE: You can have a total of eight light sources at a time.

Changing the Light Properties

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Lighting**.

STEP RESULT: The Lighting dialog appears.

2. To change the properties of the light, such as color or brightness, right-click directly on the small ball and select **Light Properties**.

STEP RESULT: The Light Property dialog appears.

3. Select a color from the **Color** menu.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can drag the **Brightness** and **Specularity** slide bars to modify the brightness of the source and the brightness of the model's reflection to light, respectively.

4. Click **OK**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To set the light properties to its default setting, select **Default**.

STEP RESULT: The light properties modifications are applied.

5. Click **Close** to close the Lighting dialog.
-

Removing a Light Source

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Lighting**.

STEP RESULT: The Lighting dialog appears.

2. Right-click directly on the small ball that you want to remove and select **Remove Light**.

STEP RESULT: The small ball disappears and the light change is reflected.

3. You can also select **Default** to restore the lighting properties to its default setting.

4. Click **Close** to close the Lighting dialog.
-

3D Views

You can display different views of 3D Models or create your own views. The following sections provide information on the default view of the model, the available camera views, native views, and user-defined views.

Default View

The **Default View** is the view of the model when it is initially loaded; usually it is the view in which the model was saved. In cases where there is no saved view, AutoVue loads the isometric view of the model.

Setting Standard or Camera Views

Rather than entering Rotation mode, you can view various predefined rotations with the **Camera Views** option from View and Markup modes.

To do so, from the **View** menu, select **Camera Views**, and then select the pre-defined view you want to display.

The view options are Isometric, Top, Bottom, Front, Back, Left, and Right.

The model changes to the selected view. You can also click the **Views** tab, then click the view from the Standard Views tree, or right-click in the workspace and select **Camera Views**.

Setting Native Views

AutoVue displays views for a 3D file as saved in its native application. Native views are present only if the file contains saved views.

From the **View** menu, select **Views**, and then select **Native Views**.

The model re-orientes to the selected view. The view options vary depending on the file. Examples of the view options are Last Saved View, Presentation, Front, Back, Left, Right, Top, Bottom, Isometric, Trimetric, and Dimetric. You can also click the **Views** tab, and then click the view from the **Native Views** tree, or right-click in the workspace and select **Views**, and then select **Native Views**.

Creating a User-Defined View

You may want to create and save your own views. AutoVue allows you to define a view and add it to the **User Defined Views**. You can define a customized view in View or Markup mode. Any views you apply to displayed models during Markup mode are saved as part of the Markup file.

TASK

1. Apply your own views or transformation to the displayed model.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The view states that you can apply and save for your defined view are Extents, Rotation, Model Transformation, Explosion, Render Modes, Color, Transparency, Visibility, Sectioning, Camera Settings and views involving Mockups.

2. From the **View** menu, select **Views**, select **User Defined Views**, and then select **Add View**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Views**, then select **User Defined Views**, and then select **Add View**.

STEP RESULT: The Add User Defined View dialog appears.

3. Enter a view name for the view that you want to define.
 4. Click **OK** to close the Add User Defined View dialog.
-

RESULT:

To see the view you defined, click the **Views** tab and select it from the User Defined Views tree or select **Views**, select **User Defined Views**.

NOTE: You can also alternate between **User Defined Views** and **Standard Views** without affecting your personalized views.

Deleting a User-Defined View

TASK

1. Under the User Defined Views tree, select the view that you want to delete, then right-click and select **Delete**.

STEP RESULT: A confirmation prompt appears.

2. Click **Yes**.
-

RESULT: The view disappears from the tree.

Displaying the Perspective Projection of a 3D Model

The **Perspective** option shows objects in three dimensions with distances, planes and curved surfaces adjusted to give a sense of depth that reflects the desired perspective to the eye.

*NOTE: You can use the **Perspective** option in any of the 3D Views since it is a projection mode rather than a view point.*

From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visual Effects**, and then select **Perspective**.

The depth of the model changes.

Viewing a Model from a Particular View Point

To view a model from a particular point, you can specify a view point.

TASK

1. From the **View** menu, select **Camera Views**, and then select **View Points**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Camera Views**, and then select **View Points**.

STEP RESULT: The View Point dialog appears.

2. Enter the coordinates for **X**, **Y** and **Z**:
 - a In the Camera Position fields, enter the coordinates to determine the position of the camera lens.
 - b In the Target Position fields, enter the coordinates to determine the position of the 3D model viewed through the camera lens.
 - c In the Up Direction fields, change the coordinates to values between 0 and 1 to determine the upward orientation.
 3. Click **OK** to close the View Point dialog.
-


RESULT: The entity moves to the defined view point. The Global axes and the User Coordinates System change position to reflect the view point.

Configuring Layers

Use this option to configure which layers to display from the current active file.

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **Layers**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Layers** .

STEP RESULT: The Select the Layers to Display dialog appears and lists the layers and layer visibility for the current active file.

2. To sort the list of layers in the dialog, click the **Name** column header to sort alphabetically or numerically, or click the **Status** column header to group by visibility.
 3. Select the check box beside the layers that you want to display.
 4. Deselect the check box beside the layers that you want to hide.
 5. Click **OK** to close the Select the Layers to Display dialog.
-

RESULT: The selected layers are displayed.

Entity Properties

You can view properties such as visibility, color, transparency, mass properties, and extents of a model or model parts.

General Attributes

The **Attributes** tab displays a model or model part's attributes. The list of attributes varies depending on the model. Some of the viewable **General** attributes are as follows:

Attribute	Description
Color	Color of the selected model part.
Density	The density of the model or selected model parts.
Name	The model part name or the displayed page name of the model.
Render Mode	The dynamic rendering used for displaying model or model part. For example, Shaded , Shaded Wire and Wireframe .

Attribute	Description
Transparency	The value between 0 and 1 representing the model or model part's degree of transparency. 0 = opaque 1 = transparent
Visibility	The value True (visible) or False (invisible) for a model or model part.

If you are displaying the 3D view of an EDA design, AutoVue displays the general attributes mentioned above. In addition, AutoVue displays attributes specific to the Printed Circuit Board (PCB), such as component name, board side, component class and device type.

If a 3D file has Product and Manufacturing Information (PMI) and a PMI entity is selected, the PMI attributes are displayed along with the above general attributes. Some of the viewable PMI attributes are X-Axis, Y-Axis, font color, text font name, and tolerance type.

Viewing Attributes

TASK

1. To view the attributes of specific model parts, select the parts from the model.
2. To view the attributes of the entire 3D model, make sure that no parts are selected.
3. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Entity Properties**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Show Entity Properties**, or in the Model Tree, select the model part or parts, then right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.

STEP RESULT: The Entity Properties dialog appears.

4. Click the **Attributes** tab.

STEP RESULT: The attributes of the selected model parts are displayed in a hierarchical tree.

5. Click **Close** to close the Entity Properties dialog.
-

Viewing Mass Properties

The Mass Properties tab displays the precise measurements for mass, volume, area, center of gravity, moments of inertia, and inertia tensor for any model or selection.

TASK

1. Select the part or parts for which you want to calculate the mass properties. To select multiple parts, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

2. To view the mass properties of the entire 3D model, make sure no parts are selected.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also make your selection after you open the Entity Properties dialog.

3. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Entity Properties**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Show Entity Properties**, or in the Model Tree, select the model part or parts, then right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.

STEP RESULT: The Entity Properties dialog appears.

4. Click the Mass Properties tab to view the properties of the selected mass.

STEP RESULT: When a mass property cannot be calculated, "N/A" displays in red for that property. When this is the case, you can also click **Error Report** for a list of mass properties that could not be calculated.

5. To change the density, change measurement units, or configure computation of inertia tensor, click **Options**.

STEP RESULT: The Options dialog appears.

6. Click **OK** to close the Options dialog.

7. Click **Close** to close the Entity Properties dialog.

Configuring Mass Properties

From the Mass Properties tab, you can change the density, the measurement units or configure the reference point of inertia tensor.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Entity Properties**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Show Entity Properties**, or in the Model Tree, select the model part or parts, then right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.

STEP RESULT: The Entity Properties dialog appears.

2. Click the Mass Properties tab.

3. Click **Options**.

STEP RESULT: The Options dialog appears.

4. To change the density, enter a value in the **Density** field.

5. To change the density units, select the unit for **Mass** and **Length** from their respective lists in the Units section.

6. To apply the density to model parts with unknown density, select **Use Only for Parts with Unknown Density**.

7. To apply the density to all model parts, select **Use for All Parts**.
 8. To change the display units, select the unit for **Mass** and **Length** from their respective lists in the Display Units section.
 9. To compute the inertia tensor based on output coordinate system, select **Output Coordinate System Origin**.
 10. To compute the inertia tensor based on the center of gravity, select **Center of Gravity**.
 11. Click **OK** to close the Options dialog.
STEP RESULT: Mass properties are instantly calculated and displayed in the Mass Properties tab. When a mass property cannot be calculated, "N/A" displays for that property. When this is the case, you can also click **Error Report** for a list of mass properties that could not be calculated.
 12. To save the changes, click **Save As**.
STEP RESULT: The Save Mass Properties As dialog appears.
 13. Specify the path where you want to store the file and enter the file name, then click **Save**.
STEP RESULT: AutoVue saves the results in a .txt file.
 14. Click **OK** to close the Entity Properties dialog.
-

Viewing Extents

The Extents tab displays the orientation coordinates and center coordinates of the X, Y, and Z axes, as well as the width, height, and depth measurements for any model or selection.

TASK

1. Select the part or parts for which you want to view Extents. To select multiple parts, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
2. To view the Extents of the entire 3D model, make sure no parts are selected.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also make your selection after you open the Entity Properties dialog.
3. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Show Entity Properties**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click in the workspace and select **Show Entity Properties**, or in the **Model Tree**, select the model part or parts, then right-click and select **Show Entity Properties**.
STEP RESULT: The Show Entity Properties dialog appears.
4. Click the Extents tab.

5. You have three extents options:
 - a Select **Transformed** if you want to view the extents after you have transformed the model.
 - b Select **UnTransformed** if you want to view the extents of the model without transformation.
 - c Select **Oriented** if you want to view the X, Y, and Z coordinates of the reoriented model or selection.
 6. Click **Close** to close the Entity Properties dialog.
-

File Properties

The File Properties tab provides file-related properties of the selected entity, such as author, date of creation, keywords, title, and so on.

To view the file properties, select a part (or the whole model) and then select **Analysis** and then **Show Entity Properties**. From the Entity Properties dialog appears, click the File Properties tab.

PMI Entities

A 3D file's Product and Manufacturing Information (PMI) is composed of annotations that are included in design files. These annotations indicate the limits and constraints that must be observed during the production of the object displayed in the 3D model.

At the highest level, PMI provides information about dimensions, feature control frames, weld specifications, and surface finishes. This information is based upon key design features which are specified through datum targets, measurement points, reference geometry (for example, construction lines, surfaces, and objects), or the geometry inherent in the object.

The following terms can be used interchangeably with the term PMI:


- Datums Cosmetics
- Dimensioning Cosmetics
- Geometric Tolerances (GTOLs)
- Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerance (GDT or GD&T)
- Functional Tolerance Annotation (FTA or FTA&A)

PMI Filtering

Use PMI Filtering to select which types of product and manufacturing information to display.

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Visibility Control**, and then select **PMI Filtering**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **PMI Filtering** .

STEP RESULT: The PMI Filtering dialog appears and displays all PMI types.

2. In the Tree column, select the check box beside the items that you want to display in the Model Tree.
 3. In the View column, select the check box beside the items that you want to display on the 3D model.
 4. Deselect the check box beside the items that you want to hide.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **All** to show all items, or click **None** to hide all items.
 5. Click **OK** to close the PMI Filtering dialog.
-

RESULT:

Only items selected in the **Tree** column are displayed in the Model Tree. Only items selected in the **View** column are visible on the 3D model. Visibility settings are saved and will be restored the next time you open the PMI filtering dialog.

NOTE: AutoVue supports default PMI visibility as saved in the file. To restore default PMI visibility, click **Default** in the PMI Filtering dialog.

Aligning to a PMI Entity

From the Model Tree, right-click the PMI item that you want to align to and select **Align To**. AutoVue aligns to the selected PMI item.

Go to a Displayed PMI Entity

From the Model Tree, right-click the PMI item that you want to go to on the model and select **Go To**. AutoVue zooms to the selected PMI item.

PMI Configuration Entities

The Views, Captures, Reference/Grouping entities refer to specific configurations of the model. These PMI configuration entities are listed in the Model Tree and are activated by right-clicking the entity and then selecting **Activate**.

Views

The View configuration entity displays predefined views, and highlights associated PMI entities.

TASK

1. Expand the Views tree to display the defined views.
 2. Right-click the selected view, and then select **Activate**.
-

RESULT:

The model and PMI entities display in the workspace as defined in the selected view. The PMI entities are also highlighted in the Model Tree.

Captures

The Captures configuration entity displays predefined views.

TASK

1. Expand the Captures tree to display the defined captures.
 2. Right-click the selected captures, and then select **Activate**.
-

RESULT: The model and PMI entities display in the workspace as defined in the selected capture.

Reference Frames

The Reference Frames configuration entity highlights the grouped PMI entities.

TASK

1. Expand the Reference Frames tree to display the predefined reference frames.
 2. Right-click the selected reference frame, and then select **Activate**.
-

RESULT: The grouped PMI entities are highlighted in the Model Tree.

PMI Hyperlinks

PMI entities can also include hyperlinks. To fire a PMI hyperlink, do the following:

TASK

1. From the Model Tree or workspace, right-click the PMI hyperlink entity.
2. From the menu, select **Follow Hyperlink**.

STEP RESULT: The 3D Hyperlink dialog appears if there are multiple hyperlinks associated with the selected PMI entity.

3. From the 3D Hyperlink dialog, select a link and then click **Fire**.
-

RESULT: The selected link opens.

Manipulating a 3D Model


You can rotate 3D CAD models along a specific axis. You can scale a model part up and down, as well as translate the model.

In Manipulate Mode, you can resize, translate, and/or rotate selected parts of the model. When you select one or more model parts, AutoVue displays a model-size representation of the Global Axes going through the selected part or parts of the 3D model.

Panning a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Manipulate** .


STEP RESULT: You are now in Manipulate mode.

2. Select the model part or parts that you want to pan.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

STEP RESULT: A model-size representation of the Global Axes appears through the model part or parts and are encased by a three-dimensional box.

3. Click and hold the mouse button on the arrow at the end of the axis that you want to pan.


4. Drag the mouse to where you want to move the part or parts.
5. To exit Manipulate mode, click **Manipulate** , or from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

Rotating a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Manipulate** .

STEP RESULT: You are now in Manipulate mode.

2. Select the model part or parts that you want to rotate.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key when selecting.

STEP RESULT: A model-size representation of the Global Axes appears through the model part or parts and are enclosed by a three-dimensional box.

3. Click and hold the mouse button on the sphere at the end of the axis you want to rotate.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The initial mouse movement determines which of the two axes will mark the site of rotation. If the axis you selected does not rotate around the right axis for the rotation that you want to make, click the sphere again and move the mouse in a different direction.

4. Clicking on an axis sphere allows rotation around one of the other two axes.
5. Move the mouse to rotate the model by the selected axis.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you want to rotate the selection freely, as done in Rotate Mode, press the **Control** key during rotation.


6. To exit Manipulate mode, click **Manipulate** , or from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

Scaling a Model Along the X, Y and Z-Axis

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.


ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Manipulate** .

STEP RESULT: You are now in Manipulate mode.

2. Select the model part or parts that you want to scale.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

STEP RESULT: A model-size representation of the Global Axes appears through the model part or parts and are encased by a three-dimensional box.

3. Click and drag a corner cube of the box up or down to scale the selected model part.
4. To exit Manipulate mode, click **Manipulate** , or from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Manipulate**.

RESULT:

To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

Part Alignment

With the **Part Alignment** option, you can select a point on a model's vertex, edge, or face to align to another model or model part.

The **Mobile** point determines the precise point of alignment for the model part. The **Fixed** point on the model determines the precise fixed point to which the mobile part aligns.

When aligning models parts, you can select from one of the following Constraint Types:

Option	Type	Description
Constraint	Coincident	The Mobile part is positioned so that the selected point on the mobile part coincides with the selected part on the Fixed part.

Option	Type	Description
	Parallel	Align the Mobile point so that it is parallel to the Fixed point.
	Perpendicular	Align the Mobile point so that it is perpendicular to the Fixed point.
	Concentric	Align the Mobile point so that it has the same center as the Fixed point

Part Alignment Constraints

The table below lists the available **Constraint Types** for different combinations of part alignment.

	Point	Line	Arc	Plane	Sphere	Cylinder	Cone
Cone	Coin Con	Par Per	Con	Per Con	Coin Con	Par Con	Coin Con Par
Cylinder	Con	Par Con	Par Con	Per	Coin Con	Par Con	
Sphere	Con	Coin Con	Con	Coin	Coin Con		
Plane	Coin	Per	Coin Par	Coin Par			
Arc	Con	Per Con	Par Con				
Line	Coin	Coin Par					
Point	Coin						

NOTE: The letters in the table indicate the **Constraint Type**:

Where:

Coin- **Coincident**

Par- **Parallel**

Per- **Perpendicular**


Con- **Concentric**

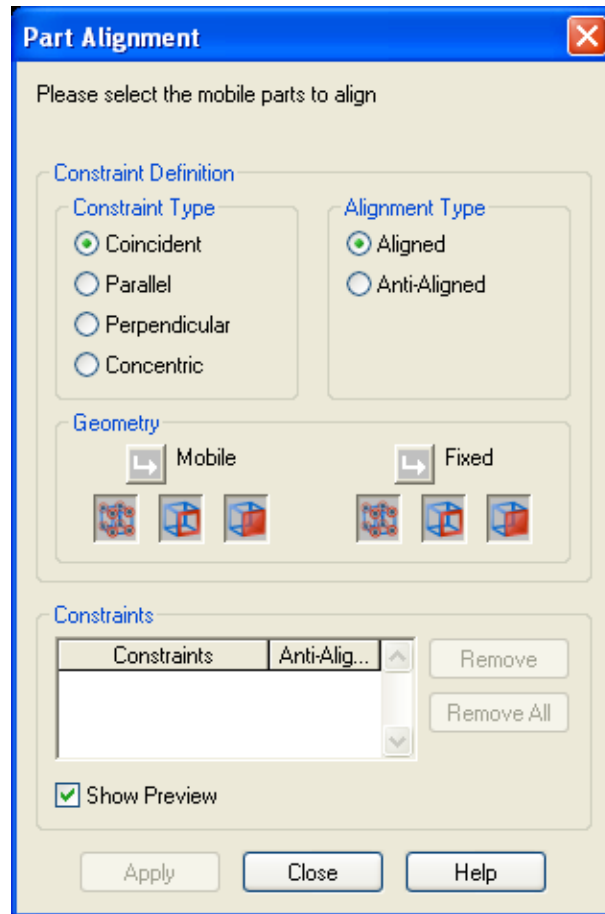
Aligning Model Parts

NOTE: To see a preview of the alignment before applying the change, select the **Show Preview** check box.


TASK








1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Align Parts**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Align Parts** .



STEP RESULT: The Part Alignment dialog appears.

2. Select the Constraint Type that you want to perform.
3. Select the Alignment Type.
4. Select **Aligned** if you want to align the Mobile point on the model part to the Fixed point on the model.
5. Select **Anti_Aligned** if you want to align the Mobile point on the model part so that it is opposite to the Fixed point on the model.
6. Select a model part. The **Mobile** arrow  is enabled.

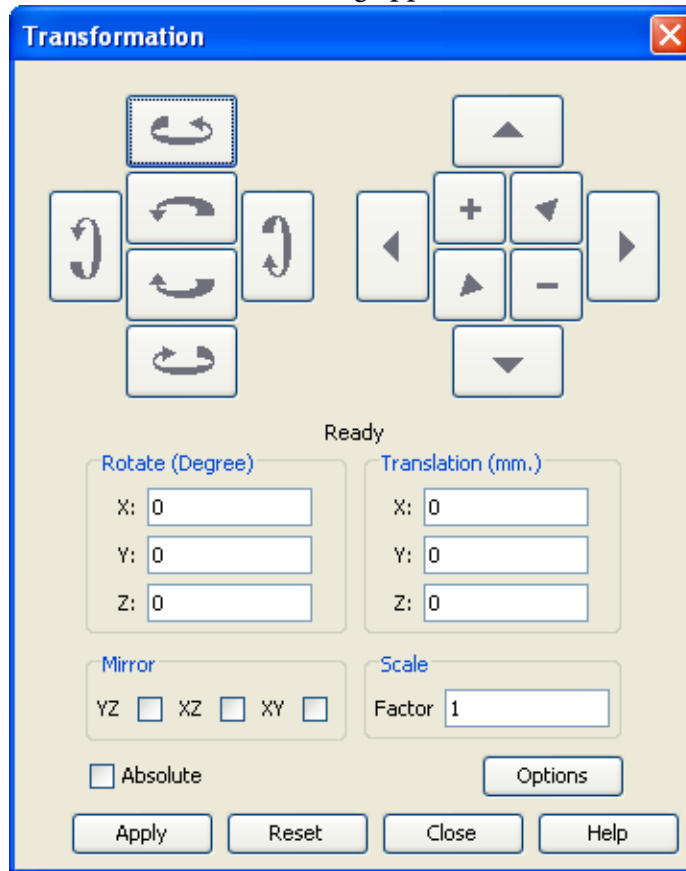
7. Click **Vertex** , **Edge** , or **Face**  to select the type of geometrical point you want to click on the model part to be aligned.
STEP RESULT: All instances of the selected geometrical point appear highlighted.
 8. Click the geometrical point on the selected model part.
STEP RESULT: The geometrical point is highlighted and the **Fixed** arrow  is enabled.
 9. Click **Vertex** , **Edge** , or **Face**  to select the type of geometrical point you want to click on the model part to remain fixed.
 10. Click the geometrical point on the model.
 11. Click **Apply**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To remove a constraint, select the Constraint that you want to remove, then click **Remove**. To remove all part alignments, click **Remove All**.
STEP RESULT: The model part is aligned according to the selected options. The Constraint Type and the types of geometrical points aligned appear under Constraints section of the dialog.
 12. Click **Close** to close the Part Alignment dialog.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: A prompt will appear if you did not apply the changes before clicking **Close**.
 13. To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.
-


Transforming a 3D Model

Using the illustrated transformation buttons or by entering X, Y or Z values, you can rotate, scale, or translate a model or any selection of model parts.

From the Manipulate menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Define**.

The **Transformation** dialog appears as follows:




NOTE: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Transform** .

In the Transformation dialog, the buttons on the left correspond to a rotational movement along the three axes, and the buttons on the right correspond to a translational movement along the three axes and the scaling up and down.

Transforming a Model Using Illustration Buttons

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Define**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also select **Transform** .

STEP RESULT: The Transformation dialog appears.

2. Select the model part or parts that you want to rotate, translate, or scale.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. If no part is selected, transformation is applied to the entire model.

3. Use the rotate or translate buttons to transform the model.

4. To set the translate, rotate and scale increments, click **Options**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: When you click a rotation, translation or scale button, the model transforms in increments of the values entered in the Options dialog.

STEP RESULT: The Options dialog appears.

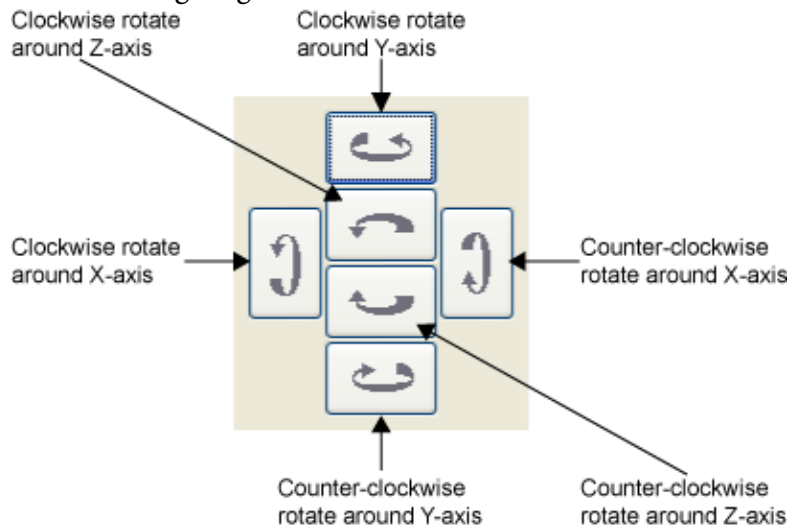
5. Enter the Translate Increment value in inches.
6. Enter the Rotate Increment value in degrees.
7. Enter the Scale Increment value.
8. Click **OK** to close the Options dialog.
9. Click **Reset** to set the model to its original transformation.
10. Click **Close** to close the Transformation dialog.

STEP RESULT: The transformation state remains displayed.

11. To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

Rotate Buttons

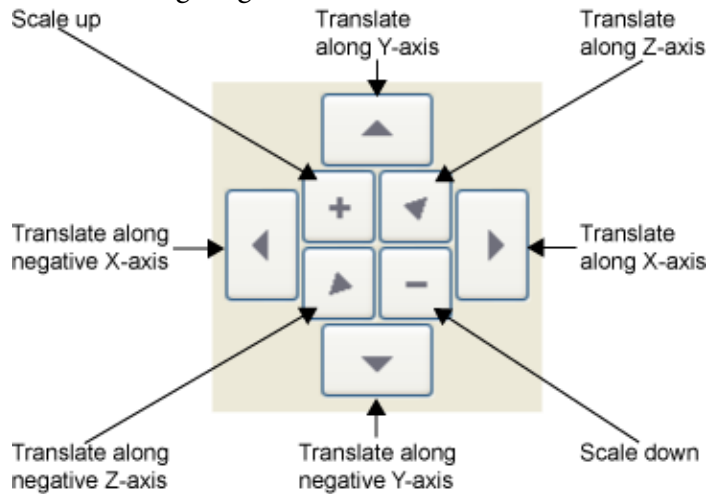
The following diagram identifies the function of each rotate button.



NOTE: To repeat a transformation, continue clicking the button.

Translate Buttons

The following diagram identifies the function of each translate button.




NOTE: To repeat a transformation, continue clicking the button.

Resetting the Transformation of a 3D Model

You can reset a model or selected parts to their original transformation.

TASK

1. View the transformed 3D Model.
2. To reset the entire model to its original transformation, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset All**.
3. To reset selected model parts to their original transformation, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**.


ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also reset selected model parts. To do so, from the Model Tree, deselect the check box beside the parts in the Transformation column .

RESULT:

The model or selected parts are reverted back to their original transformation.

Transforming a Model by Setting Values

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Define**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also select **Transform** .
STEP RESULT: The Transformation dialog appears.
2. Select the model part or parts that you want to rotate, translate or scale.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
3. To rotate the model by set values, enter the X, Y and Z value.
4. To translate the model by set values, enter the X, Y and Z value.
5. To view a mirror image, in the Mirror section of the dialog, select a check box.
6. To scale the model by a factor, enter a scale factor in the Factor field.
7. Click **Apply**.
8. To apply absolute transformation instead of incremental, select the **Absolute** check box.
9. Click **Apply**.
10. To repeat a transformation, deselect **Absolute**, then continue clicking **Apply**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To set the model to its original transformation click **Reset**.
11. Click **Close** to close the Transformation dialog.
STEP RESULT: The transformation state remains displayed.

RESULT:

To restore the default state of a part of the model, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Reset Selected**. To restore the default state for the whole model, select **Reset All**.

Sectioning

With the Sectioning feature, you can view the cross-section and cut-through of 3D models. In the Define Section dialog, you can define the section plane position, section plane orientation, and the cut-through.

Section Plane Options

In the Define Section dialog, you can use the following options to define the orientation of the section plane:

Option	Description
XY Plane	Section plane is oriented along the XY plane.
YZ Plane	Section plane is oriented along the YZ plane.
XZ Plane	Section plane is oriented along the XZ plane.
From 3 Vertices	Select three vertices on the object to define the orientation of the section plane.
From Face Normal	Select a face on the object to define the orientation of the section plane perpendicular to the face.
From Edge Tangent	Select an edge on the object to define the orientation of the section plane perpendicular to the edge's tangent.
Define a Plane	Define X, Y and Z coordinates to orient the section plane.

Cut Options


In the Define Section dialog, you can use the following cut options to define the cut-through of an object:

Option	Description
Don't Cut	Display the object without a cut.
Cut	Object displayed is cut along the section plane.
Invert	Reverse the selection, display the other part of the object.
Show Both	Restore the cut part of the object.
Edges Only	Display only the edges of the object along the section plane.

Defining the Section Plane and Cut-through

TASK

1. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Section**, and then select **Define**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Sectioning** .

STEP RESULT: The Define Section dialog appears.

2. From the Section Plane list, select the orientation for the section plane.
3. From the Cut Options list, select the cut option that you want.
4. To define the plane position, click and drag the **Plane Position** slider to the position you want.
5. Select **Dynamic**, if you want the plane to move simultaneously with the slider.
6. Select **Show Plane**, if you want the section plane visible.
7. Select **Fill**, if you want the section plane filled.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The fill color can also be set from the Configuration dialog.

STEP RESULT: The section plane is displayed as filled and the **Section Area** is calculated.

8. From the Measured Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the section surface.
9. Click **Close** to close the Define Section dialog.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Once you have defined the section plane and closed the Define Section dialog, among other options, you can choose whether to enable, remove, or invert a defined section from the **Section** menu.


Exporting Section Edges

You can export a copy of the section plane and save it as a **.dxf** or **.dwg** file.

TASK

1. Define a section plane.
2. From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Section**, and then select **Export**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If the Define Section dialog is already open, click **Export**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Sectioning** .

STEP RESULT: The Export Section As dialog appears.

3. Enter a file name and select a directory location to export the file.
4. From the Save As Type list, select whether to save the file as **.dxf** or **.dwg** format.

5. Click **Save**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To remove a section plane, from the **Manipulate** menu, select **Section**, and then select **Remove**.

Exploding



You can use the Explode option to better understand the structure of an assembly and to analyze the dismount capability. You can also save the exploded view, as well as obtain a printed document of the exploded product for further analysis.

Explode Options

From the Explode dialog, you can define how the explosion is to be performed and to visually explode or implode a model.




The options that you can set are:

Option	Description
Maximum Depth	Define up to which level you want to explode. All entities from the root level to the specified level are exploded. All entities on the other levels will not be exploded. If you are exploding: Whole model - the number of available levels depends on how many explodable levels exist in the model. For example, if there are four levels, with level 2 being the first level under the main assembly, then level 3 and level 4 are added to the list. Selected parts - the number of available levels to be added to the list depends on the selected virtual tree.
Animated	When selected, animation is shown while exploding or imploding the model.
Show Arrows	When selected, arrows are displayed in an explosion assembly. The arrow starts from an exploded entity and points to the center point of its parent.


Option	Description
Scroll Explode	<p>Dragging the slider gradually displays the progression of the explosion to show the explosion dynamics.</p> <p>Explode - pressing  brings the explosion level to the (n-1) level if current explosion level is between n-1 (inclusive) and n level (exclusive).</p> <p>Implode - pressing  brings the explosion level to the n level if current explosion level is between n-1 (exclusive) and n level (inclusive).</p>

Exploding a 3D Model

TASK

- From the **Manipulate** menu, select **Explode**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also select **Explode** .
STEP RESULT: The Explode dialog appears.
- Select the parts that you want to explode.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. To explode the entire model, ensure that no parts are selected.
- From the Maximum Depth list, select the level to which you want the model to explode.
- Select **Animated** if you want to see an animated view of the explosion.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: This option is selected by default.
- Select **Show Arrows** if you want to display the arrows.
- To explode the model, click .
STEP RESULT: The whole model or the select model parts explode.
- To implode the model, click .
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To manually change the explosion state, click and drag the scroll bar.
- Click **OK** to close the Explode dialog.

RESULT:

The explode state remains displayed, and the **Transformation** column  in the Model Tree is updated indicating the exploded parts.

See “Resetting the Transformation of a 3D Model”

Saving an Exploded View of a 3D Model

From the Explode dialog, you can save the exploded view of the 3D model.

TASK

1. Explode a 3D Model.
2. Click **Save View** in the Explode dialog.

STEP RESULT: The Add User Defined View dialog appears.

3. Enter a view name.
4. Click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The view is saved and appears in the Views tab under the User Defined Views tree.

5. Click **OK** to close the Explode dialog.
-

RESULT:

The exploded state is saved.

See “Resetting the Transformation of a 3D Model”

User-Defined Coordinate Systems

You have the option of creating customized three-axis coordinate systems. As with the **Global Axes** and the **World Coordinate System**, the user-defined axes are represented by a red X-axis, a green Y- axis, and a yellow Z-axis.

See “Global Axes”

When you set a User-Defined Coordinate System (UCS) as the active axes, operations such as measuring, transforming a model, or defining a view point are applied with respect to these axes.

You can create multiple UCS’s for a 3D file. For multiple-page 3D files, you can even set active a different UCS for each page.

Position Options

When defining a UCS, you can define the point where you want to place the user coordinate system.

The options are:

Position	Description
(x, y, z) Coordinates	If selected, enter a value to specify where the three axes are positioned.
Vertex	If selected, all vertices are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor on a vertex. Click the vertex point where you want to place the user coordinate system. The x , y and z coordinate values for the vertex are displayed. The UCS axes move to the new position.
Edge	If selected, all edges are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor near an edge. Click at a point on an edge where you want to place the user coordinate system. The x , y and z coordinate values for the edge point are displayed. The UCS axes move to the new position.
Midedge	If selected, all edges are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor near the halfway point of an edge. Click at the mid-edge point where you want to place the user coordinate system. The x , y and z coordinate values for the mid-edge point are displayed. The UCS axes move to the new position.
Arc Center	If selected, all arcs and circles are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor near the center of a circle or arc. Click on the arc center where you want to place the user coordinate system. The x , y and z coordinate values for the arc center are displayed. The UCS axes move to the new position.
Face	If selected, when you move the cursor along a model face, the face is highlighted. Click at a point on the face where you want to place the user coordinate system. The x , y and z coordinate values for the arc center are displayed. The UCS axes move to the new position.

Orientation Options

When defining a UCS, you can define the orientation for the coordinate system.

The options are:

Position	Description
(x, y, z) Coordinates	If selected, enter a value to specify the UCS orientation according to one or more of the three axes.

Position	Description
Edge Tangent	If selected, all edges are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor near an edge. First select the axis that will determine the UCS orientation. Click at a point on an edge to define the orientation. The x , y and z values for the edge point are displayed. The UCS axes are reoriented to the selected edge.
Face Normal	If selected, when you move the cursor along a model face, the face is highlighted. First select the axis that will determine the UCS orientation. Click at a point on an face to define the orientation. The x , y and z values for the face point are displayed. The UCS axes are reoriented to the selected face.
2 Vertices	If selected, all vertices are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor on a vertex. First select the axis that will determine the UCS orientation. Click two vertex points to define the orientation. The x , y and z values for the vertices are displayed. The UCS axes are reoriented to the selected vertices.
3 Vertices	If selected, all vertices are highlighted on the model. A snap box appears when you move the cursor on a vertex. First select the axis that will determine the UCS orientation. Click three vertex points to define the orientation. The x , y and z values for the vertices are displayed. The UCS axes are reoriented to the selected vertices.

Deleting a User Coordinate System

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Set User Coordinate System**.
STEP RESULT: The User Coordinate Systems dialog appears.
 2. From the Coordinate System list, select the trihedral coordinate system that you want to delete.
 3. Click **Delete**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The UCS disappears from the list.
 4. Click **OK** to close the User Coordinate Systems dialog.
-

Modifying a User-Defined Coordinate System

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Set User Coordinate System**.
STEP RESULT: The User Coordinate Systems dialog appears.

2. From the Coordinate Systems list, select the UCS that you want to modify.
STEP RESULT: The settings you configured for the UCS are displayed.
 3. To change the name, highlight the name and enter the new one.
 4. To change the position of the UCS, click the Position tab, then from the Define From list, select the point where you want the UCS axes to appear.
 5. To change the orientation, click the Orientation tab, then from the Define From list, select the point where you want to orient the UCS.
 6. To show the UCS axes, select **Show Trihedron**. To hide the UCS axes, deselect the check box.
 7. To change the UCS that it is relative to, select the UCS from the Relative To list.
 8. Click **OK** to close the User Coordinate Systems dialog.
-

RESULT: If you modified the position or orientation, the UCS axes dynamically move to the new position. A change in Show Trihedron option will make the UCS axes appear or disappear accordingly. Additionally, a name change will display the new name in the Coordinate Systems list.

Activating a Coordinate System

When you set a User-Defined Coordinate System (UCS) as the active axes, operations such as measuring, transforming a model, or defining a view point are applied with respect to these axes.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Set User Coordinate System**.
STEP RESULT: The User Coordinate Systems dialog appears.
 2. From the Coordinate System list, select the trihedral coordinate system that you want to use.
 3. Click **Set Active**.
 4. Click **OK** to close the User Coordinate Systems dialog.
-

RESULT: The newly active trihedral coordinate system appears bolder and larger on the model.

Defining a User Coordinate System

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Set User Coordinate System**.
STEP RESULT: The User Coordinate Systems dialog appears.
 2. Click **New**.
STEP RESULT: The name of the User-Defined Coordinate System (UCS1 for the first one) appears in the Coordinate Systems list.
 3. To change the name that you want for the UCS, in the **Name** field, enter a new name.
 4. Click the Position tab to define the origin of the UCS.
 5. From the Define From list, select the point where you want the UCS axes to appear.
 6. Click **Apply**.
 7. Click the Orientation tab to define the orientation of the UCS.
 8. From the Define From list, select the point where you want to orient the UCS.
 9. Click **Apply**.
 10. To hide the UCS axes on the model, deselect the **Show Trihedron** check box.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: This option is selected by default.
 11. Click **OK** to close the User Coordinate Systems dialog.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If there is more than one coordinate system for this file, select which coordinate system the new UCS will be relative to from the Relative To list. Otherwise, the new UCS is calculated with respect to the World Coordinate System.
-

RESULT:

The newly active trihedral coordinate system appears bolder and larger.

See “Modifying a User-Defined Coordinate System”

“Activating a Coordinate System”

Interference Checks

You can check for spatial interference of any two model parts.


Interference Check Options


With the **Interference Checking** option, you can perform different interference checks. These checks are:

Check	Description
All Against All	Check for interference of any of the parts in the model.
Set Against the Rest	Check where a model part or set of model parts interfere with other model parts.
Set Against Itself	Check where a model part or set of model parts interfere with itself.
Set 1 Against Set 2	Check where a model part or set of model parts interfere with another model part or set of model parts.

Performing an Interference Check

TASK

- From the **Analysis** menu, select **Check for Interference**.
STEP RESULT: The Interference Checking dialog appears.
- From the Scope options, select the type of interference check that you want to perform.
- If you selected **Set Against the Rest** or **Set Against Itself**, select one or more model parts on the model or from the Model Tree.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one model part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To clear the last set of selected model parts, click **Clear**.
STEP RESULT: The model parts appear in the Selected Set list and are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.
- If you selected **Set 1 Against Set 2**, click the **Set 1** arrow , then select one or more model parts on the model or from the Model Tree.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To clear a selected part, press the **Control** key and click on the part on the model. To clear the last set of selected model parts, click **Clear**.
STEP RESULT: The model parts appear in the Set 1 list and are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.

5. Click the **Set 2** arrow  then select one or more model parts on the model or from the Model Tree.
STEP RESULT: The model parts appear in the Set 2 list and are highlighted in a different color on the model and in the Model Tree.
 6. In the **Minimum Clearance Distance** field, enter a distance. The default value is 0.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Adding a minimum clearance distance not only checks if the two model parts interfere, but also checks if they are located within a set minimum distance.
 7. From the Units list, select the unit for the clearance distance.
 8. To configure the interference check results, click **Options**.
STEP RESULT: The Options dialog appears.
 9. Click **Compute** in the Interference Checking dialog.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Section plane is not taken into consideration when computing an interface check. When the process is complete, all the instances of interfering pairs appear in the Results list. The number of interfering pairs found appears in the Description box.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To view a pair's interference information, click the corresponding Results line.
STEP RESULT: The **Compute** button changes to **Stop**. To stop the Interference Checking process at any point, click **Stop**. The information appears in the Description box and AutoVue zooms into the interfering area.
 10. To save the results, click **Export**.
STEP RESULT: The Export Results dialog appears.
 11. Specify the file name and the directory where you want to save the file.
 12. Click **Save** to close the Export Result dialog.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To perform another interference check click **Reset**, then click the type of interference check.
STEP RESULT: AutoVue saves the results in a **.csv** (Comma Separated Values) file.
 13. Click **Close** to close the Interference Checking dialog.
-

Interference Check Results Options

With AutoVue, you can configure the results of an Interference Check.

The configuration options are:

Option	Select	Description
Actions	Zoom To	Once the interference check is computed and a result set is selected from the list of results, AutoVue zooms to the result.
	Show Intersection	Once the interference check is computed and a result set is selected from the list of results, AutoVue shows where the intersection of model parts occur.
Selected Pair	Opaque	The selected pair from the list of results appear opaque.
	Transparent	The selected pair from the list of results appear transparent.
	Hide	The selected pair from the list of results appear hidden.
The Rest	Transparent	The rest of the model appears transparent while the selected pair is displayed.
	Hide	The rest of the model is hidden while the selected pair is displayed.





- **Actions:** Provides a close-up look at how model parts interfere.
- **Selected Pair:** Configure if the selected pair from the Results list should display opaque, transparent or hidden.
- **The Rest:** Configure if the other parts of the model should display transparent or hidden while the selected pair is displayed.

Comparing 3D Files

When comparing 3D files in a non-integrated environment we recommend that you use Universal Naming Convention (UNC) file names or the server protocol so as to ensure that all required sub-assemblies and parts are retrieved from correct paths. For information on

UNC file names and the server protocol, refer to the *Installation and Administration Manual*.

AutoVue provides the ability to compare two 3D files or two sets of entities from the same file or different files and display color-coded comparative data. When you compare two files, AutoVue displays a Compare Tree and three windows, the first containing the base file, the second containing the file you compared the base against, and the third containing the comparison results.

The Compare Tree displays the model's hierarchy with a State column displaying different icons representing the results of the file comparison. The icons indicate if an model part has been added , modified , moved , or deleted .

In the Comparison Result window, results are displayed in different colors to differentiate the results of the file comparison. The comparison options and corresponding colors are:

Option	Color	Description
View Additions	Green	Indicates that something has been added.
View Deletions	Red	Indicates that something has been deleted.
View Unchanged	Blue	Indicates that there is no change.

Comparing 3D Files

The following steps describe how to compare files:

TASK

1. View the base file.
2. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Compare**.

STEP RESULT: The Open dialog appears.

3. Enter the file name or browse to locate the file you want to compare with the current active file.
4. Click **Open**.

STEP RESULT: AutoVue displays the Compare Tree and three windows. The first window displays the base file, the second displays the compare file, and the third displays the comparison results.

5. To view the properties of a modified or moved entity in the base file and in the compare file, select the modified  or moved  entity from the tree, then right-click and select **Entity 1 Properties**.

STEP RESULT: The Entity Properties dialog appears displaying the properties of the entity in the base file.

6. Select the entity again, then right-click and select **Entity 2 Properties**.

STEP RESULT: The Entity Properties dialog appears displaying the properties of the entity in the compare file.

7. To compare the results of the entity in the base file to the compare file, select the entity from tree, then right-click and select **Compare Results**.

STEP RESULT: The Compare Results dialog appears.

8. To view the attribute differences, click **Attributes**.

9. To view the transformation difference, click **Transformation**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If there are no attribute or transformation differences, the buttons are disabled.

10. Click **OK** to close the Compare Results dialog.

11. To exit Compare mode, from the **File** menu, select **Exit Compare**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also select **Exit Compare** .

RESULT:

The base file appears in the workspace.

Comparing Entity Sets

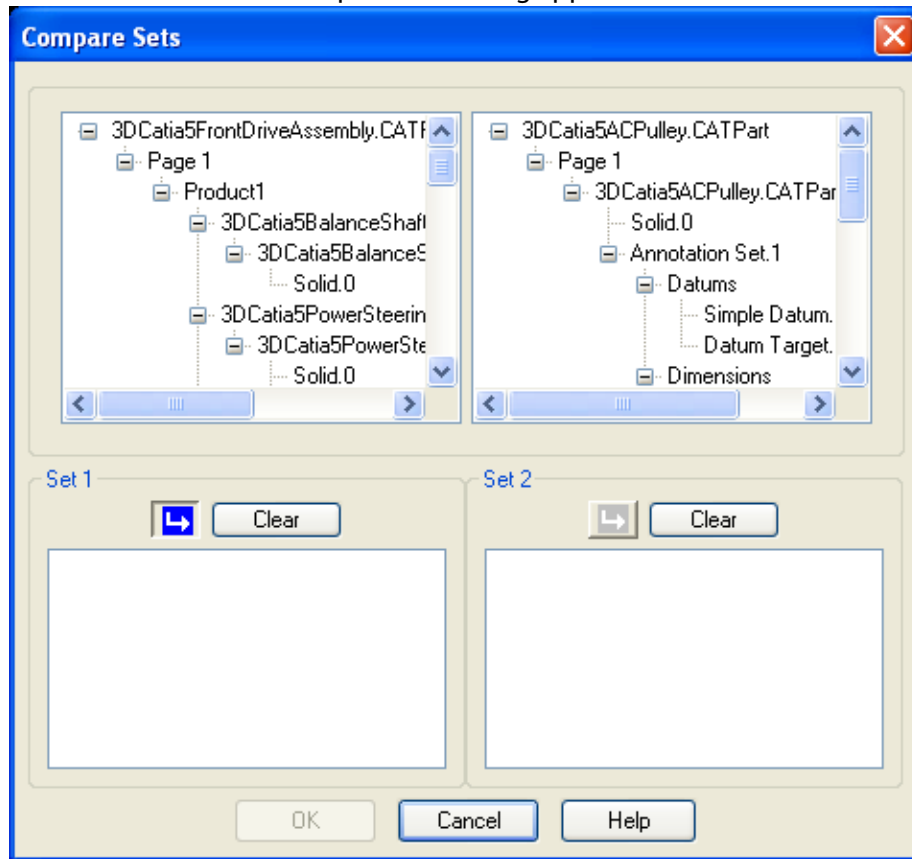
From the file comparison, you can compare a set of entities from one file against a set of entities from the another file. You can also compare sets of entities from the same file.



TASK

1. Select the files you want to compare.

- From the **Analysis** menu, select **Compare Sets**.

STEP RESULT: The Compare Sets dialog appears.



- Click  **Set 1**.
- Select the entities from either the tree on the left or the tree on the right.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The tree on the left is the base file and the tree on the right is the compare file.
STEP RESULT: The selected entities appear in the Set 1 list.
- Click  **Set 2**.
- Select the entities from the other tree that you did not select for Set 1.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To compare entities from the same file, select the entities for Set 1 and Set 2 from either the base file or the compare file.
STEP RESULT: The selected entities appear in the Set 2 list.
- Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The Compare Tree and the three windows are updated with the set comparison results.
- To restore the comparison files, from the **Analysis** menu, select **Compare Files**.

RESULT:

The files appear in the three windows.

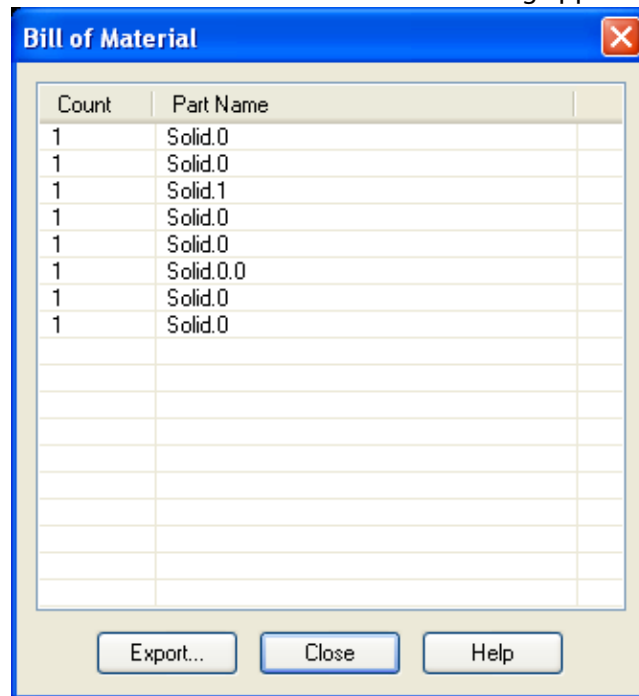
Generating a Bill of Material

For 3D files, you can obtain a list with a count of the parts required for manufacturing the item featured in the file. To generate a *Bill of Material* (BOM):

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Generate Bill of Material**.

STEP RESULT: The Bill of Material dialog appears.



2. To sort the list numerically, click the Count column header.
3. To sort the list alphabetically, click the Part Name column header.
4. To view a part or parts on the model, select the parts from the Part Name column.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one part, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

STEP RESULT: The parts are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree.

5. To save the Bill of Material, click **Export**.

STEP RESULT: The Export BOM dialog appears.

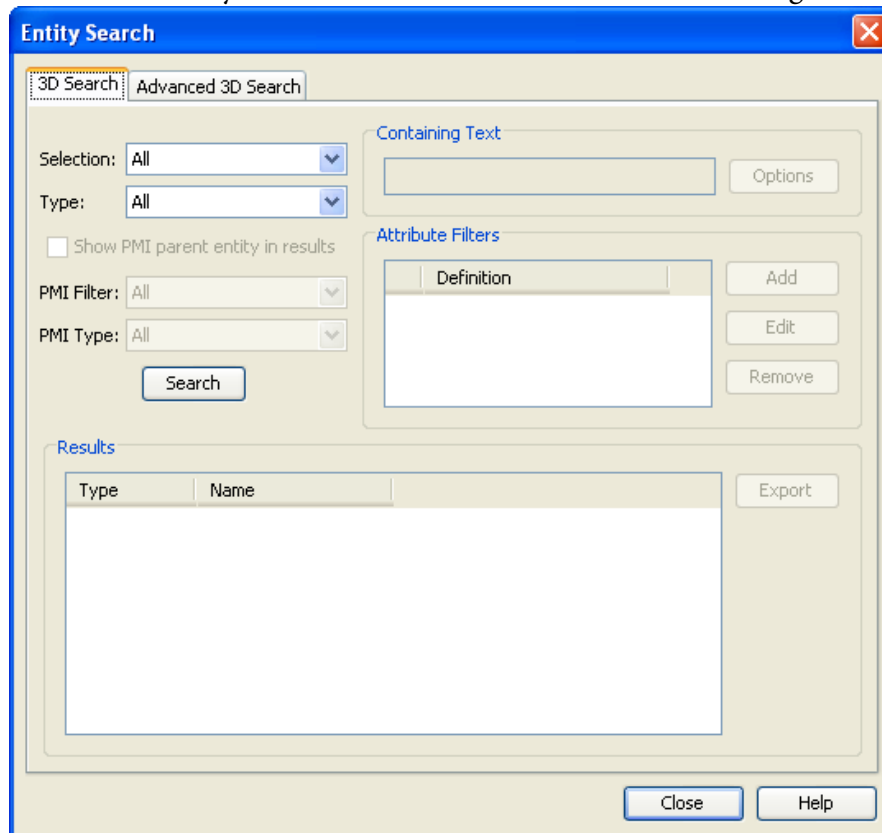
6. Enter a file name or browse to locate the directory where you want to store the file, then click **Save**.

STEP RESULT: AutoVue saves the results in a **.csv** (Comma Separated Values) or **.xml** file.

7. Click **Close** to close the Bill of Material dialog.
-

Entity Search

AutoVue allows you to search for entities in a 3D model using the Entity Search dialog.



You can search the whole model or selected entities on the model, perform a 3D text search, apply attributes, entity type or PMI filters as search criteria to filter entities. You can also search for entities by the size of an entity and location, or select entities from the results list and have them appear highlighted in the workspace and in the Model Tree.


The search options are:

Where	Option	Description
3D Search tab	Selection	Specify if you want to search the entire model or selected parts or parts that are not selected.
	Type	Specify the type of entity you want to search. For example, part, body, assembly or PMI.
	Show PMI parent entity in results	When selected, displays only the parent entity of a PMI entity that matches search criteria. If cleared, displays PMI entities that match search criteria in the Results dialog. Option is enabled if Type is set to PMI or All and file has PMI entities.
	PMI Filter	Filters the entities that have PMI information. Option is enabled if Type is set to PMI or All .
	PMI Type	Specify the specific PMI attribute you want to search. Option is disabled if PMI Filter is set to All .
	Containing Text	Specify a text string that you want to search. AutoVue searches for a specified string in attribute names and attribute values.
	Attribute Filters	Specify attributes to search for in 3D model. See “Performing an Attribute-based Search”
Attribute Filter dialog	Name	Specify the specific attribute you want to search. Some of the available attributes: Color Density Display_Mode Filepath Layer_ID Name Translucency Visibility <i>NOTE: The attributes vary depending on the file being viewed.</i> See “Performing an Attribute-based Search”
	Any Value	When selected, AutoVue searches for any value of the selected attribute. The attribute value options are disabled. If cleared, specify the values for the selected attribute you want to search. The attribute value options correspond to the selected attribute.

Where	Option	Description
Advanced 3D Search tab	Volume	Specify the size of an entity, the minimum and maximum dimensions. The dimensions of an entity boundary box must be between the specified dimensions to meet the search criteria.
	Location	Specify an axes aligned boundary box. The boundary box of an entity must be inside it to meet the search criteria.

Performing a Search

TASK

1. From the **Edit** menu, select **Entity Search**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Entity Search** .
STEP RESULT: The Entity Search dialog appears.
2. Click the **3D Search** tab.
3. From the Selection list, specify what parts of the model that you want to search.
 - To search the entire model, select **All**.
 - To search specific parts of a model, select **Selected** and then select the parts on the model.
 - To search the model parts that are not selected, select **Not selected**.
4. From the Type list, select the type of entity that you want to search.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: For 3D Models that have PMI information, the PMI search features are enabled.
5. Select the **Show PMI parent entity in results** check box if you only want the parent entity of the selected PMI entity or entities to appear in the Results list.
6. Deselect the check box if you want all PMI entities to appear in the Results list.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The option is enabled if **PMI** or **All** are selected from the Type list and the file has PMI entities.

7. From the PMI Filter list, select the type of entities that you want to search.
 - To search all entities, select **All**.
 - To search entities with PMI, select **With PMI**.
 - To search entities without PMI, select **Without PMI**.
8. From the PMI Type list, select the type of entity that you want to search.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The PMI Type list is disabled if **All** is selected from the PMI Filter list.
9. Click **Search** to perform the entity search.

RESULT:

The search results appear in the Results list.

Performing a 3D Text Search

From the **Containing Text** field of the Entity Search dialog you can search for a text string in the 3D model.

By default, AutoVue searches the attribute name and attribute value for the entered text.

Enter the text you want to search for in the **Containing Text** field and then click **Search**.

Performing an Attribute-based Search

From the Entity Search dialog, you can search for entities by their attributes, such as color, density, shading, and so on.

TASK

1. From the **Edit** menu, select **Entity Search**.

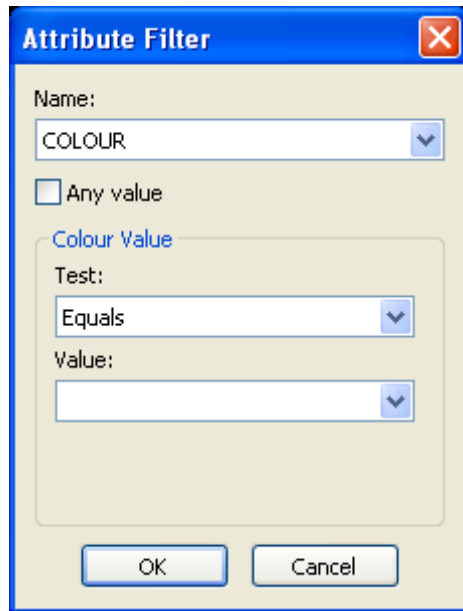
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Entity Search** .

STEP RESULT: The Entity Search dialog appears.

2. Click the **3D Search** tab.
3. Select the search criteria that you want to use for your search.

4. Click **Add**.

STEP RESULT: The Attribute Filter dialog appears.



5. From the Name list, select the attribute that you want to search.

STEP RESULT: The Value list appears corresponding to the selected attribute.

6. Select the **Any Value** check box if you want to search by any value; the associated value options are disabled.
7. Deselect the **Any Value** check box if you want to search by a specific value; from the Condition set condition for the search, and from the Values list select the values that you want to search.
8. Click **OK**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To add more than one Attribute Filter, repeat steps 4 to 8.

9. To edit an Attribute Filter, select the filter and click **Edit**.

STEP RESULT: The Attribute Filter dialog appears allowing you to edit the filter.

10. To disable an Attribute Filter, deselect the check box beside the filter or filters that you want to disable.
11. To enable an Attribute Filter, select the check box beside the filter or filters.
12. To remove an Attribute Filter, in the Entity Search dialog, select the filter and click **Remove**.

STEP RESULT: The Attribute Filter disappears from the list.

13. In the Entity Search dialog, click **Search**.

STEP RESULT: A list of entities matching the search criteria appear in the Results list displaying the name and type of the entities.

14. Click **Close** to close the Entity Search dialog.

Performing an Advanced 3D Search

From the Entity Search dialog, you can search for entities using volume or location filters. *Volume* specifies the size of the entity: you can specify the minimum and maximum dimensions an entity must be between. *Location* specifies an axes aligned boundary box: you can specify the dimensions for an axes aligned boundary box that an entity must be inside.

TASK

1. From the Entity Search dialog, click the **Advanced 3D Search** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Entity Search' dialog box with the 'Advanced 3D Search' tab selected. The dialog is divided into two main sections: 'Volume' and 'Location'. Both sections have an 'Enabled' checkbox. The 'Volume' section includes 'Minimum Dimensions' and 'Maximum Dimensions' fields for X, Y, and Z, a 'Completely contained' checkbox, and a 'Units' dropdown menu. The 'Location' section includes 'Point 1' and 'Point 2' fields for X, Y, and Z, a 'Fits completely' checkbox, and a 'Units' dropdown menu. At the bottom are 'Close' and 'Help' buttons.

2. To search for entities by **Volume**, select the **Enabled** check box.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you want to search for entities that match all three dimensions, select the **Completely contained** check box. If the check box is deselected, then an entity only has to match one dimension in order to appear in the Results list.
3. Enter the minimum and maximum dimensions in their respective fields.
4. From the Units list, select the unit you want to set for the **Volume** dimensions.
5. To search for entities by location, select the **Enabled** check box.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you want to search for entities that match all three dimensions, select the **Fits completely** check box. If the check box is deselected, then an entity only has to match one dimension to appear in the Results list.
6. From the Units list, select the unit you want to set for the Location dimensions.
7. Enter the dimensions for **Point 1** and **Point 2**.
8. Click the 3D Search tab.

9. Click **Search**.

STEP RESULT: A list of entities matching the search criteria appears in the Results list.

10. Click **Close** to close the Entity Search dialog.
-

Saving Search Results

TASK

1. Perform a 3D entity search.

2. Click **Search**.

STEP RESULT: A list of entities matching the search criteria appear in the Results list displaying the type and name.

3. To save the results, click **Export**.

STEP RESULT: The Save As dialog appears.

4. Specify the path where you want to store the file and enter the file name, then click **Save**.
-


RESULT:

AutoVue saves the results in a **.csv** (Comma Separated Values) file.

Measuring in 3D Files

AutoVue provides the ability to perform measurements in 3D files. When measuring, AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to different entity types on the model.

From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure** to access the Measurement options.

NOTE: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

The following table outlines the available measuring options:

Name	Description
Angle	Measure the precise angle between any three vertices or any two edges, planes, faces or any combination of these entity types.





Name	Description
Arc	Measure the precise radius, length and angle of any arc and calculate the center point.
Distance	Measure the precise distance between any two vertices, edges, mid-edges, arc centers, faces or any combination of these entity types.
Minimum Distance	Measure minimum distance between any two vertices, edges, mid-edges, arc centers, faces or any combination of these entity types.
Edge Length	Measure the precise length of a edge.
Face Surface	Measure the precise surface area.
Vertex Coordinates	Provide the coordinates of each vertex.



3D Snapping Modes

Snapping modes allow you to select or snap to different entity types on a model. For example, if you select **Vertex**, all vertices are highlighted and a snap box appears when you move the cursor over a vertex.

Snapping modes allow you to snap to the following entities.

NOTE: The behavior of snapping modes change in regards to the selected measurement option. For example, the behavior of arc center is not the same for distance and minimum distance.

Button	Description	Behavior
Vertex 	Highlights vertices on the model.	A snap box appears when you hover the mouse pointer over a vertex.
Edge (Line) 	Highlights edges on the model.	The edge is highlighted when you hover the mouse pointer. <i>NOTE: When measuring Minimum Distance, the finite edge is selected. However, when measuring Distance, the infinite edge is selected.</i>
Edge Middle 	Highlights edges on the model.	The edge is highlighted and a tooltip appears indicating the middle edge coordinate when you hover the mouse pointer.
Arc 	Highlights arcs on the model.	The arc is highlighted when you hover the mouse pointer.

Button	Description	Behavior
Arc Center 	Highlights arcs and circles on the model.	The arc is highlighted and a tooltip appears indicating the arc center coordinate of the arc when you hover the mouse pointer. <i>NOTE: When measuring Minimum Distance, the arc center is selected. However, when measuring Distance, the infinite arc axis is selected.</i>
Face (Plane) 	Highlights faces when you move the cursor over a face.	The face is highlighted when you hover the mouse pointer.

Measuring Distance

Use the *Distance* option to measure the distance between two vertices, edges, arc axes, faces or any combination of these entity types.

NOTE: This release of AutoVue includes improved 3D measurement capabilities. If you wish to revert the previous release's distance measurement interface, set the SHOW_POINTOPOINT_PAGE INI option. Refer to the Installation and Administration Manual for more information.

The following table details how the distance between two entities are measured using snapping modes.

Snapping Mode Entities	Vertex	Line	Arc Center	Plane
Vertex	Distance between two points.	The shortest segment connecting the point and the line.	The shortest segment connecting the point and the arc.	The shortest segment connecting the point and the plane.
Line		Distance between two lines. <i>NOTE: The lines must be parallel.</i>	The line and axis must be parallel. Distance between the line and arc axis.	The distance between the line and the plane. <i>NOTE: The line must be parallel to the plane.</i>
Arc Center			Distance between the axes of the arcs. <i>NOTE: Arc planes must be parallel.</i>	Distance between the arc axis and the plane. <i>NOTE: The plane and the arc plane must be perpendicular.</i>
Plane				Distance between the two planes. <i>NOTE: The planes must be parallel.</i>

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.

2. Click the **Distance** tab.

3. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: See "3D Snapping Modes" for more information.

STEP RESULT: All entities of the selected snapping modes are highlighted on the model.

4. From the Units list, select a measurement unit.

5. On the model, select an entity as the starting point for the measurement.



ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you want to take more than one measurement from the same starting point, select **Fix Position**.

6. Select the snapping modes that you want to select as the end point for the measurement.

STEP RESULT: All entities of the selected entity types are highlighted on the model.

7. On the model, select the entity you want to measure to.
-

RESULT:

The distance from the first set of entities to the second set is highlighted by a line. The measured distance, Delta X, Delta Y and Delta Z appear in the Measurement dialog. Additionally, the coordinates for the center point of each entity displays in the **From**  and **To**  fields.

To take another measurement click **Reset**.

Calibrating Distance

Calibrate the distance measurement.

TASK

1. Measure distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.
 2. From the **Distance** tab, click **Calibrate**.
- STEP RESULT:* The Distance Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance
3. From the Units list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
 4. Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.
 5. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
 6. Click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The calibration result appears in the Measurement dialog.


7. Click **Close** to close the Distance tab.
-

Measuring Minimum Distance

With the **Minimum Distance** option you can measure the minimum distance between model parts, as well as any two points from the selection sets: vertices, edges, mid-edges, arc axes, arc centers, faces or any combination of entity types.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.

2. Click the **Min. Distance** tab.

3. Click  **Set 1**.

4. From the Snapping Mode section, select one of the following:
 - Select **Entity** if you want to measure the distance between model parts. Snapping modes are disabled.
 - Select **Geometry** if you want to measure the distance between entity types. Snapping modes are enabled.

5. If you selected **Entity**, select a part or parts on the model. If you selected **Geometry**, select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To reset a set, click **Clear**. To clear items from a set, select the items and press the Delete key. To deselect a part or entity type on the model, press the Control key and left-click the part or entity type.

STEP RESULT: The model parts appear in the list under **Set 1** and are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree. All entities of the selected entity type are highlighted on the model.

6. Click  **Set 2**.

7. Repeat step 5.

STEP RESULT: The model part appears in the list under **Set 2**.

8. From the Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.

9. Click **Compute**.

STEP RESULT: The minimum distance from the first set of entities to the second set is highlighted by a line. The measured minimum distance, X, Y, and Z coordinates for **Position 1** and X, Y and Z coordinates for **Position 2** appear in the Measurement dialog.

10. To take another measurement click **Reset**.


11. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the precise angle between any three vertices or any two edges, planes, faces or any combination of these entity types.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.

2. Click the **Angle** tab.

3. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

STEP RESULT: Entities of the selected types are highlighted on the model.

4. To measure the angle between an entity type and a plane, select the **With Plane** check box, and then select the plane from the list.

5. From the Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.

6. Click two points on the model to define the angle.

STEP RESULT: Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them.

7. Click again to complete the measurement.

STEP RESULT: The angle is highlighted and the value of the angle measurement appears in the dialog.


8. To take another measurement click **Reset**.
-

Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to measure the precise radius, length and angles of any arc on the model. You can also calculate the center point location.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.

2. Click the **Arc** tab.

3. Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.

STEP RESULT: All arc and circles are highlighted on the model. Snapping modes are disabled.

4. Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points.

STEP RESULT: Snapping modes are enabled.

5. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
6. From the Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the arc distance.
7. If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the arc.
STEP RESULT: The points are joined by an arc. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog.
8. If you selected **Arc Entity**, click the edge of the arc that you want to measure.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To take another measurement click **Reset**.
STEP RESULT: The arc is highlighted. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, ratio, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement dialog.
9. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.

Calibrating an Arc


TASK

1. Measure an arc in the drawing.
 2. From the **Arc** tab, click **Calibrate**.
STEP RESULT: The Radius Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance.
 3. From the Units list, select a unit of measurement to which you want to calibrate the distance.
 4. Click **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value.
 5. Click **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
 6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The calibration results appear in the Arc tab.
 7. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Measuring Vertex Coordinates

The **Vertex Coordinates** option provides the coordinates of vertices on the model.

TASK


1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.

2. Click the **Vertex** tab.
STEP RESULT: All vertices on the model are highlighted.
 3. From the Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure.
 4. Move the cursor over the highlighted vertex that you want to measure.
STEP RESULT: The **X**, **Y** and **Z** coordinates appear in a tooltip.
 5. Select the vertex.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To take another measurement click **Reset**.
STEP RESULT: The **X**, **Y** and **Z** coordinates appear in the Measurement dialog.
 6. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Measuring the Length of an Edge

Use the **Edge Length** option to measure the length of any edge on the model.

TASK


1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.
 2. Click the **Edge Length** tab.
STEP RESULT: All edges on the model are highlighted.
 3. From the Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the edge length.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you want to cumulate the measurement of more than one edge, select **Cumulative**.
 4. Click the edge that you want to measure.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To take another measurement click **Reset**.
STEP RESULT: The edge length measurement appears in the Measurement dialog.
 5. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Measuring Face Surface

Use the **Surface** option to measure the surface area of an entity face or an entire entity on the model.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.

2. Click the **Surface** tab.
3. Select **Face Surface** if you want to measure the surface area of a face on an entity.
4. Select **Entity Surfaces** if you want to measure the surface area of an entire entity.
5. From the Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the surface.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you want to cumulate the measurement of more than one surface, click **Cumulative**.

6. If you selected **Face Surface**, move the cursor on the model to highlight a face surface, then click the face surface that you want to measure.

STEP RESULT: The face surface is highlighted. The measured surface appears in the Measurement dialog.

7. If you selected **Entity Surface**, click the entity that you want to measure.

STEP RESULT: The entity, as well as all the faces belonging to the body are highlighted. The measured surface of the body appears in the Measurement dialog.

8. To measure the face surface of the entity, click on the highlighted body.

STEP RESULT: A list appears displaying the entity and its parents.

9. Select the entity or a parent from the list.

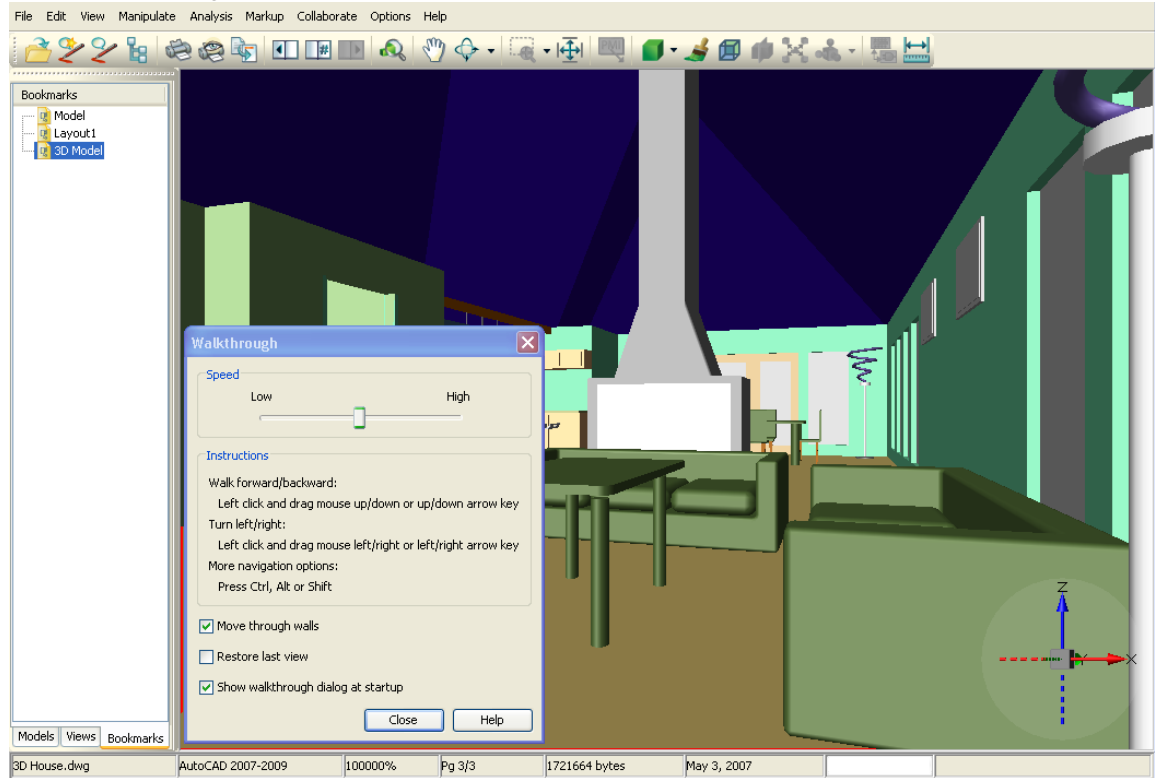
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To measure the face surface of a parent, select the parent from the list.

STEP RESULT: The selected entity is highlighted and the measured surface appears in the Measurement dialog.

10. To take another measurement click **Reset**.
 11. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Walkthrough

The Walkthrough feature in AutoVue provides an interactive visualization of 3D models.

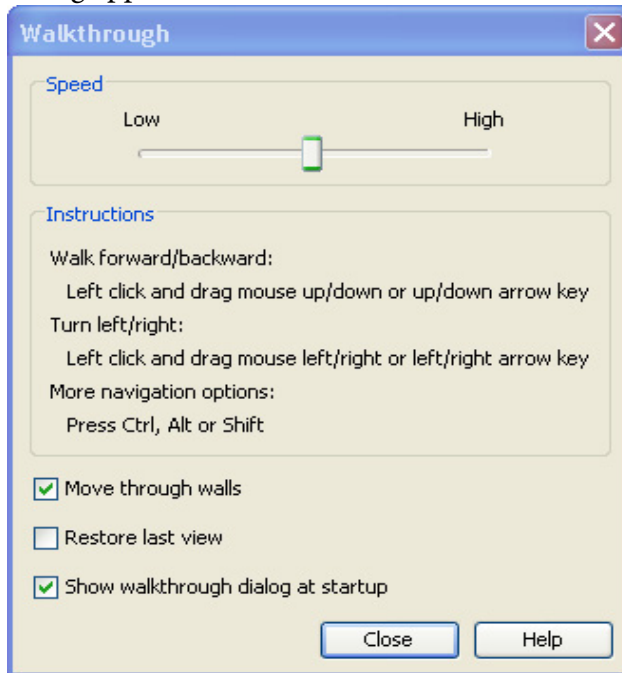


In Walkthrough mode you can manipulate the view of a 3D model as if you are walking or flying through the model, take measurements of the model, and change the camera position and orientation. For example, when viewing a 3D model of house, you can enter the front door and move between rooms and floors. All the while, you have a 360 degree view of your surroundings and the ability to add markups.

The Walkthrough feature can also be utilized when using the Collaborate feature in AutoVue. Observers can view the Controller's walkthrough of the 3D model in real-time. See "Real-Time Collaboration" for more information on the Collaborate feature.

Walkthrough Dialog

To enter Walkthrough mode, from the **View** menu, select **Walkthrough**. The Walkthrough dialog appears.



NOTE: Closing the Walkthrough dialog does not exit Walkthrough mode. To exit, you must deselect **Walkthrough** from the **View** menu.

The Instructions panel explains the possible model manipulation options while you perform the walkthrough. See “Walking Through a 3D Model” for more information.

From the Speed panel of the Walkthrough dialog, you can adjust the increment speed of the camera for all walkthrough functions.

By default, the **Move through walls** option is selected. This feature allows you to walk through walls when viewing a model. You can deselect the option to enable the collision detection feature.

The **Restore last view** option saves the last view of the model before exiting walkthrough mode. As a result, when you re-enter walkthrough mode, the last view displays.

Walking Through a 3D Model

If you want to position yourself on a surface of the 3D model, press the **Alt** key and double-click a point on the surface. For example, to walk through a 3D model of a house, you can Alt + double-click the landing in front of the door.

Once you are at your desired view point of the 3D model, you can use the arrow keys or mouse to navigate through the model.

The following table lists the available keyboard/mouse actions and their function:

Keyboard Action	Mouse Action	Function
Up arrow, Down arrow	Click and drag up, down, or roll the mouse wheel forward and backward	Move forward, backward
Left arrow, Right arrow	Click and drag left, right	Turn left, right
Alt + Up arrow, Alt + Down arrow	Alt + drag up, down or Mouse middle button click and drag up, down	Move up, down (Elevation)
Alt + Left arrow, Alt + Right arrow	Alt + drag left, right or Mouse middle button click and drag left, right	Side step left, right
Ctrl + Up arrow, Ctrl + Down arrow	Ctrl + click and drag up, down	Look up, down
Ctrl + Left arrow, Ctrl + Right arrow	Ctrl + click and drag left, right	Rotate
	Alt + double click	Places camera perpendicular to selected plane


Adding Markups in Walkthrough Mode

When walking through a 3D model you can add a Note markup entity.

NOTE: The Note markup entity is the only markup supported in Walkthrough mode.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **New**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **New Markup** .

STEP RESULT: AutoVue enters Markup mode.

2. Create a Note markup entity. See “Adding a Note” for more information on how to create Note markup entities.


ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can continue walking through the model while creating new Note markup entities.

3. Save your new markups. See “Saving a New Markup File” for more information.

STEP RESULT: The markups are saved.

4. To exit Markup mode, from the **Markup** menu, select **Close All**.
5. To view the 3D model's associated Markup files, select **Open** from the **Markup** menu. See "Opening Markup Files" for more information.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The Note markup entities appear in the Markup Entity tree, but not in the workspace. To view the markups, double-click the Note entities in the Markup Entity tree.

STEP RESULT: The markups open and the Note markup icon  appears in the workspace.

Configuring AutoVue

Use the configuration options to configure the AutoVue workspace for different groups of file formats or for all files in general. For example, you can set different background colors for EDA, 2D, 3D, or Office files. You can also set paths to locate external resources such as fonts, symbols, XRefs, or configure measurement options.

To access the configuration options, from the **Options** menu, select **Configure**. The Configuration dialog appears. To implement your changes and to close the Configuration dialog, click **OK**.

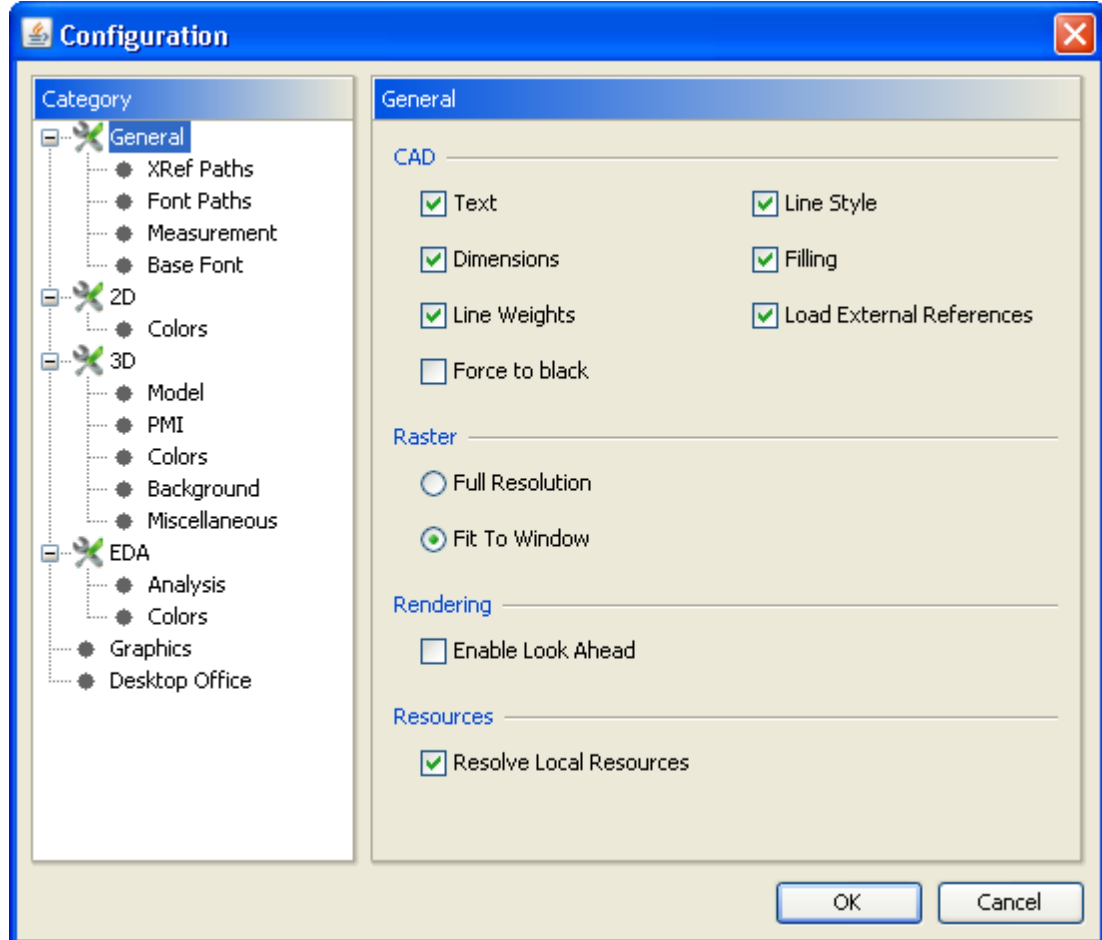
General Options

To access the **General** configuration options:

TASK

1. From the **Options** menu, select **Configure**.

STEP RESULT: The Configuration dialog appears.



2. From the Configuration tree, select **General**.

RESULT: The **CAD**, **Raster**, and **System Options** appear.

Configuring Options for CAD Files

Configure how you want to display text, dimensions, line styles, and so on for CAD files.

Option	Description
Text	Select to display text entities. Clear to hide text entities.
Dimensions	Select to display all dimensional entities. Clear to hide simple dimension entities.
Line Weights	Select to display varying line thicknesses. Clear to make all lines appear equal, with a width of 1 pixel. No line weights display for any line.
Force to Black	Select to force all colors of a drawing to black. Clear to display the file in color.
Line Style	Select to display dotted and dashed lines. Clear to display all lines as solid.
Filling	Select to display filled entities as filled rather than just an outline. Clear to hide filling for filled entities.
Load External References	Select to display Xrefs automatically. Clear to keep Xrefs from displaying automatically.

Raster Files

Choose how you want the raster file to display:

Select **Full Resolution** to display raster files at full resolution.

Select **Fit to Window** to display raster files to fit the current window.

Rendering

When **Enable Look Ahead** is selected and you zoom into a part of a file, AutoVue renders adjacent tiles. The advantage to this is improvement in performance when zooming in on parts of a file. The disadvantage is that if the client machine is idle for at least one second, **Enable Look Ahead** is triggered which could slow down current operations. However, once all tiles are rendered, all zoom operations speed up again.

If **Enable Look Ahead** is deselected, AutoVue renders the tiles when requested, that is, only when you zoom in on parts of the file.

Resources

If **Resolve Local Resources** is selected, and AutoVue tries to locate XREFs on the client-side using client path settings. If not found on the client-side, AutoVue will attempt to retrieve the XREFs on the server. If **Resolve Local Resources** is unchecked, AutoVue attempts to resolve the XRefs on the server-side only.

Configuring Paths

Configure the paths for XRefs and fonts. These path settings are read only if **Resolve Local Resources** is checked.

When working with files that need external resources, such as fonts or XRefs, you may need to specify the path to these external resources if they do not exist in the same location as the base file.

Path	Description
XRefs	The directory paths for any external reference files associated with 2D, 3D or EDA files.
Font	The directory paths for fonts required by AutoVue's vector files.

Configuring XRef Paths

XRef Paths are the directory paths for any external reference files associated with 2D, 3D, or EDA files.

TASK

1. From the Category tree, expand **General**, and then select **XRef Paths**.
2. Click **Add**.
STEP RESULT: The Add Path dialog appears.
3. Enter the directory path, or scroll to locate the directory where the external reference files are located.
4. To browse all subdirectories below the current path, type two asterisks** at the end of the file path. For example, **C:\samples**** results in browsing all subdirectories below "samples".
5. To browse one subdirectory below the current path, type one asterisk * at the end of the file path. For example, **C:\samples*** results in browsing one subdirectory below "samples".

6. Click **OK**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To add more than one path to the list, repeat steps 3 to 5.

STEP RESULT: The directory path appears.

7. To change the order, select the path you want to move, then click **Up** or **Down** to move the path to where you want it in the list.
8. To remove a path, select the path and click **Remove**.
9. Click **OK** to close the Configuration dialog.

Configuring Font Paths

Font Paths are the directory paths for fonts required by 2D, 3D, EDA, or PDF files.

TASK

1. From the Category tree, expand **General**, and then select **Font Paths**.
2. Click **Add**.

STEP RESULT: The Add Path dialog appears.

3. Enter the directory path or scroll to locate the directory where the external font files are located.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To browse all subdirectories below the current path, type two asterisks ** at the end of the file path. For example, **C:\samples**** will result in browsing all subdirectories below "samples". To browse one subdirectory below the current path, type one asterisk * at the end of the file path. For example, **C:\samples*** will result in browsing one subdirectory below "samples".

4. Click **OK**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To add more than one path to the list, repeat steps 3 to 5.

STEP RESULT: The directory path appears.

5. To change the order, select the path you want to move, then click **Up** or **Down** to move the path to where you want it in the list.
6. To remove a path, select the path and click **Remove**.

STEP RESULT: The selected path disappears from the list.

7. Click **OK** to close the Configuration dialog.

Measurement

The **Measurement** options let you define the default measurement units and the number of decimal places.

From the Configuration tree, expand **General**, and then select **Measurement** to display the options you need.

The available options are as follows:

Option	Description
Decimal Digits	Lets you specify the number of decimal digits displayed for each measurement. Enter a number from 1 to 18.
Default File Units	Lets you specify the units to use for drawings when the drawings do not contain units.
Measurement Units	Lets you specify the default unit to use for measurements.

Configuring the Base Font for Text Files

The **Base Font** option lets you define the font properties for text files.

TASK

1. From the Category tree, expand **General**, and then select **Base Font**.
 2. Select a font from the Font list.
 3. Select a font size from the Size list.
 4. Select the **Bold** option, **Italic** option, or both options to change the font style.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can see a preview of the text in the Sample area.
 5. Click **OK** to apply the font change and close the Configuration dialog.
-

RESULT: The font changes will only apply to text files.

Configuring AutoVue for 2D Files

You can configure background color, snap and overlay extents settings for 2D files.

TASK

1. From the **Options** menu, select **Configure**.

STEP RESULT: The Configuration dialog appears.

2. Select **2D** in the tree.

STEP RESULT: The **2D** options appear.

Snap Settings

In measurement mode, when you move the cursor within a predetermined snap radius, the snap box appears for the entity to be selected. To change the snap radius, change the value in the **Snap Radius** field. The snap radius is configured in pixels.

Overlays Extents Settings

When you add overlays, AutoVue automatically tries to scale the overlay extents to match the base file extents. If you wish to disable this behaviour, clear the Match Extents checkbox in the Overlays section of the 2D Configure dialog.

Configuring Colors

The **Colors** settings let you modify colors for 2D files.

From the tree, expand **2D**, and then select **Colors** to display the following options:

Option	Description
Background	Change the color of the background for 2D files.
Measurement	Modify the color you want displayed when taking measurements on 2D files.

Configuring AutoVue for 3D Files

There are configuration options that you can set to customize the work environment when working with 3D files.

TASK

1. From the **Options** menu, select **Configure**.

STEP RESULT: The Configuration dialog appears.

2. From the Category tree, select **3D**.

STEP RESULT: The **Rendering**, **Dynamic Rendering**, and **Frame Rate** options appear.

Rendering

The **Rendering** options let you modify the manner in which the model is rendered.

Changing these options affects the level of detailed displayed. The **Rendering** options are:

Option	Description
Smooth Shading	Set by default. Turning this option off renders curved surfaces of shaded models as a series of flat surfaces. The level of detail is thus reduced but render speed is increased. Only affects shaded models.
Back-Face Removal	If selected, instructs AutoVue not to render the back faces of the model being displayed. This increases the render speed but the model appears less realistic while in motion. Only affects shaded models.
Tristrip	If selected, enable/disable tristripping of mesh data for display.

Dynamic Rendering

The **Dynamic Rendering** options let you select the rendering mode for a model in motion.

The options you can select are:

Menu Option	Description
Fast Frame	Model spins or rotates at a fast rate. The level of detail is reduced, which enables faster rendering when the model is in motion.
Wire Frame	Model is displayed as wire framed during rotation or spinning.
Flat Shading	Smooth shading is not performed on curved surfaces while the model is in motion.
Wire Polygons	Render the model in wire polygon mode while in motion.
Vertex Cloud	Model is displayed as a skeleton of vertices when in motion.
Bounding Box	Model parts are enclosed by bounding boxes when the model is in motion.
Current Render Mode	Model is rendered in the same mode whether moving or static.

Frame Rate

The **Frame Rate** slider lets you define the frame rate for rotating and dynamic zooming on 3D files. Drag the slider to specify the frame rate. Drag the slider to the left for a lower frame rate and to the right for a higher frame rate.

A higher frame rate results in a lower resolution.

Model

The **Model** configuration options let you control the streaming method, the dynamic load mesh resolution, and the visibility of model parts.

From the Category tree, expand **3D**, and then select **Model** to load the **Loading**, **Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution**, **Initial Visibility**, and **PMI Initial Visibility** options.

Loading

Control the streaming method with the **Dynamic Loader** option.

When the option is selected, AutoVue loads enough detail to display an accurate visual representation of the model. The data is loaded based on the level of detail that is necessary at that point in time.

When the option is deselected, AutoVue requests data in 10% chunks until it reaches full resolution for the file. You would see the model initially at coarse resolution, but continuously refining.

Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution

Control the initial resolution with the **Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution** slider.

When you select **Dynamic Loader**, you can control the initial resolution by setting the **Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution**. When you set the Dynamic Load Mesh Resolution to High, the file displays at a higher resolution when you zoom, resulting in a smoother look.

For more information, refer to the *Installation and Administration Manual*.

Initial Visibility

With the **Initial Visibility** options, you can specify the visibility of model parts when first opening a 3D file.

Option	Description
Default Visibility	Load model with default visibility options.
All Visible	Force all parts ON in the display.
All Invisible	Force all parts OFF in the display. To display model parts, select the part(s) from the Model Tree.

PMI Initial Visibility

With the **PMI Initial Visibility** option, you have the option to set a threshold for the number of PMIs to display for large models. To do, select the **Don't display PMI for large models** check box, and then enter the number of PMIs to display in the **PMI Threshold** field.

PMI Filtering

From the tree, expand **3D**, and then select **PMI** to display the PMI options.

The **PMI Filtering** options let you configure which types of product and manufacturing information to display. The check boxes in the **Tree** column let you select which PMI entity

types display in the 3D model tree. The check boxes in the **View** column let you select which PMI entity types display in the workspace.

The following **PMI Text Rendering Style** options let you define the style for the PMI text:

Option	Description
Native Setting (from file)	PMI text displays with the default setting.
3D	PMI text displays in 3-dimensions. It may not always face you.
Flat-to-screen	PMI text always faces you.

Configuring Color

With the **Color** options, you can configure the color to allow easier viewing of 3D file details.

From the Configuration tree, expand **3D**, and then select **Colors** to view the available Color options. They are grouped under **Common**, **Section Highlight**, and **Geometry Highlight**, as follows:

Common

Option	Description
Background	Set the background color for 3D view.
Selection	Set the color when selecting a model or model parts.
Entity Default	Set the default color to use when the model color is not stored in the native file.
Measurement	Set the color for measurements.
Min. Distance Set 1	Set the color of the first set-point when measuring minimum distance.
Min. Distance Set 2	Set the color of the second set-point when measuring minimum distance.

Section Highlight

Option	Description
Edges	Set the color for the section edges when defining Section Cut Options.
Fill	Set the fill color when defining Section Cut Options.

Geometry Highlight

Option	Description
Vertex	Set the color for vertices when highlighted during measurement and markup.
Face	Set the color for faces when highlighted during measurement and markup.
Edge	Set the color for edges when highlighted during measurement and markup.

Configuring Background

With the **Background** options, you can select a gradient or an image to display in the background. From the Configuration tree, expand **3D**, and then select **Background**. The Background Gradient and Background Images options appear.

For the Background Gradient option

Select either **Plain**, **Directional Gradient**, or **Radial Gradient**. The background is previewed to the right of the options.

For the Background Images option

TASK

1. Click Add.

STEP RESULT: The Background Image dialog appears.

2. Click on the ellipses to the right of the Image File field to browse to the image file.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can only select **.bmp**, **.jpeg**, or **.img** files.

3. From the Stretch Type list, select whether to leave the image as is, **Stretch to fill**, **Zoom to fit**, or **Zoom to fill**.
 4. From the Position in the Background list, select where to position the image.
 5. Click **OK** when done.
-

RESULT:

*NOTE: The selected Background is implemented when you click **OK** in the Configuration dialog.*

Miscellaneous

From the Configuration tree, expand **3D**, and then select **Miscellaneous** to display the Miscellaneous option:

Display

The **Show Global Axes** option is active by default. Disable this option to remove the axes that display in the bottom-right corner of the workspace.

Model Tree

Enter a different value in the **Tree Level** field to define the level at which you want the Model Tree to collapse when opening a 3D file. The default is 3 levels.

Manipulator

Enable the **Align with current UCS** option to automatically align the manipulators with the current User-defined Coordinate System.

Selection

The following **Selection** options let you define how AutoVue indicates that an object is selected.

Option	Description
Highlight Bounding Box	Selection is enclosed in a wireframe box.
Highlight Entity	Selection is indicated by changing color.

Walkthrough

The following **Walkthrough** options let you configure the view to use when you enter walkthrough mode and to control whether or not you want to see the Walkthrough dialog at startup.

Option	Description
Restore Last View	Select this option to save the last view of the model before exiting walkthrough mode. As a result, when you re-enter walkthrough mode, the last view displays.
Show Walkthrough dialog on startup	Select this option if you want the Walkthrough dialog to display when you start walkthrough mode. Clear this option if you do not want to see the Walkthrough dialog on startup.

Configuring AutoVue for EDA Files

There are configuration options that allow you to customize your work environment when working with EDA files. To access the EDA configuration options, from the **Options** menu, select **Configure**. In the Configuration dialog that appears, select **EDA** in the tree.

Customizing Selections

Configure how you want selected components to be highlighted. From the Configuration tree, select **EDA**. There are two selection options: **Highlight Entity** and **Dim Unselected**.

Highlight Entity


Activate this option to highlight all entities that you select. This option is enabled by default.

NOTE: The default highlight color is yellow.

See Also “Modifying Colors”

Dim Unselected

Activate this option to dim all the entities that are not selected. Selected entities retain their original entity color.

From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Dim Unselected** .

When you select Dim Unselected, you can set the dimness level for entities that are not selected. Drag the slider to the right to increase the dimness level and to the left to decrease the dimness level. The icon to the right of the dimness settings in the Configuration dialog lets you preview the dimness level.

Additionally, with Dim Unselected, you can select the **Thicken Highlighted Entity** check box. This option makes the selected entity appear more pronounced. Deselect the check box to return the entity to its default thickness.

Displaying Tooltips

When you hover the mouse over an entity, a tooltip appears to show you information about the entity. You can disable or enable these tooltips. When the option is selected, AutoVue automatically retrieves the entity information from the server. Clear this option if you do not want this behavior every time your mouse hovers over an entity.

TASK

1. From the tree, select **EDA**.
 2. Under the **Mouse Hover** heading, select or deselect the **Show Entity Information Tooltip** option.
 3. Click **OK**.
-

Modifying 3D View

You can configure the board thickness and component height for the 3D PCB view of EDA files. Note that these Board Thickness and Component Height values are used only if the underlying EDA file does not contain board thickness and component height information.

TASK

1. From the Configuration tree, select **EDA**.
 2. Enter a value in the **Default Board Thickness** field to change the board's thickness.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The **Default Board Thickness** option only affects boards that have no board thickness defined in the design. If a board has a defined thickness, this option does not affect that board.
 3. Enter a value in the **Default Component Height** field to change the component height.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The **Default Component Height** option affects components that do not have height defined in the design. If a component has a defined height, this option does not affect that component.
 4. To work with a different unit of measurement, select another unit from the **Default Units** list. This is the unit of measurement used for values set in the **Default Board Thickness** and **Default Component Height** fields.
 5. Reload the file to see your changes.
-

Synchronizing Layers when Comparing Files

When you compare files, you can synchronize all layer settings. When the layer settings are synchronized, changing one setting changes the same setting for both files you are comparing.

TASK

1. From the tree, expand **EDA**, and then select **Analysis**.
 2. Select the **Layer Settings** option to synchronize all layer settings when comparing files.
-

RESULT:

NOTE: This option is only applicable for PCB drawings.

Configuring Zoom Behavior when Cross Probing

You can configure the zoom options when you cross probe files.

TASK

1. From the tree, expand **EDA**, and then select **Analysis**.
2. Select one of the following **Cross Probe** options:
 - a Select **Keep Current Zoom Level**. When this option is active, the view of the target files remains the same while you cross probe.
 - b Select **Zoom Selected** to automatically zoom in on selected entities while you cross probe. This option is enabled by default.
 - c Select **Zoom Fit** to automatically adjust the contents of a file along the horizontal or vertical axis to fully display within the current window.

Modifying Colors

You can configure the colors for EDA files.

From the tree, expand **EDA**, and then select **Colors**.

In the Color Options dialog, the options that you can configure are grouped under **Common** and **3D View** as follows:

Common

Option	Description
Background	Set the background color for 3D view.
Selection	Set the color when selecting a model or model parts.
Entity Default	Set the default color to use when the model color is not stored in the native file.
Measurement	Set the color for measurements.
Min. Distance Set 1	Set the color of the first set-point when measuring minimum distance.
Min. Distance Set 2	Set the color of the second set-point when measuring minimum distance.

3D View

Option	Description
Default Board Color	Configure the color of the board in 3D view.
Default Component Color	Configure the component color in 3D view.

Configuring Background Colors for Graphic Files

Specify background colors for mono raster files and color raster files.

TASK

1. From the **Options** menu, select **Configure**.
STEP RESULT: The Configuration dialog that appears.
 2. Select **Graphics** in the tree.
 3. From their respective Background lists, select colors for mono raster files and color raster files.
-

Configuring Background Colors for Desktop Office

Specify background colors for the following types of Desktop Office files:

- Document
- Spreadsheet
- Database

- Archive

TASK

1. From the **Options** menu, select **Configure**.
STEP RESULT: The Configuration dialog appears.
 2. Select **Desktop Office** in the tree.
 3. Select a background color for each Desktop Office file type.
-

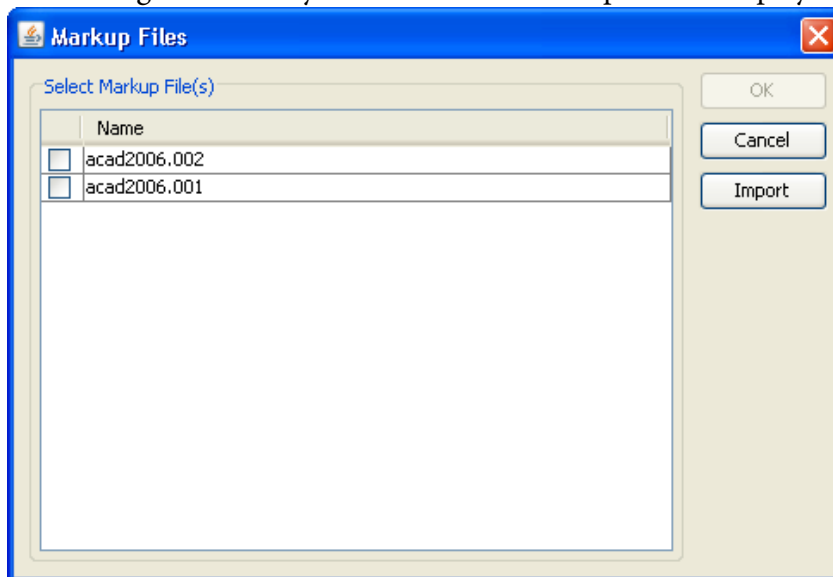
Markups

AutoVue has the ability to view hundreds of different file formats and to create markups for all its readable file formats without the document's authoring application.

Marking up refers to drawing and writing on an electronic document. When you create a markup for a file, the markup is created on top of the original file. Markups are saved in separate files.

***NOTE:** When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.*

If a file has existing Markup files, the **Markup Indicator** icon  appears in the status bar at the bottom of the AutoVue workspace. Clicking the Markup Indicator opens the Markup Files dialog and allows you to select the Markup files to display.



When you open a Markup file, AutoVue layers the markup over the original file.

In Markup mode you can:

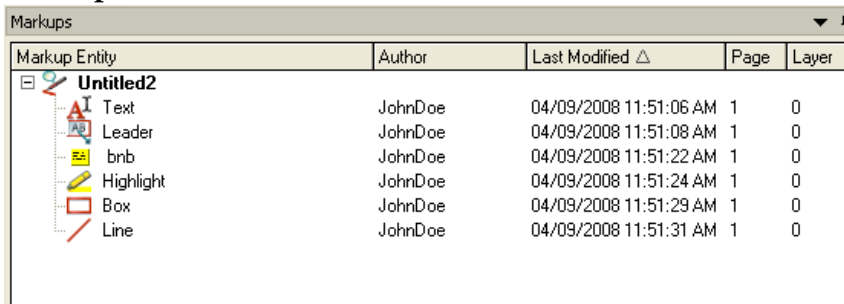
- Create entities such as text, arcs, boxes, circles, clouds, lines, arrows, and polygons.
- Add a stamp or information to an entity by adding a text or a note.
- Create, name, and color layers to organize your work.
- Create a new Markup file that combines copies of selected layers of different Markup files.

- Create measurement markup entities that can be moved or resized.
- Navigate markups through a hierarchy tree, view markup properties, and sort the tree according to each property.
- View markup layers individually or in combination.

NOTE: By default, markups are disabled for Office documents. For information on how to enable markups for Office documents, refer to the “INI Options” chapter in the *Installation and Administration Manual*.

Markup Navigation Tree

When you are in Markup mode, a **Markup Navigation Tree** appears below the workspace. If the tree does not appear, from the **Options** menu, select **Show Panel**, and then select **Markup Panel**.



The screenshot shows a 'Markups' panel with a tree view for 'Untitled2'. The tree contains a 'Text' markup, which has a sub-tree containing 'Leader', 'bnb', 'Highlight', 'Box', and 'Line'. To the right of the tree is a table with columns: Markup Entity, Author, Last Modified, Page, and Layer.

Markup Entity	Author	Last Modified	Page	Layer
Text	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:06 AM	1	0
Leader	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:08 AM	1	0
bnb	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:22 AM	1	0
Highlight	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:24 AM	1	0
Box	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:29 AM	1	0
Line	JohnDoe	04/09/2008 11:51:31 AM	1	0

The tree displays a hierarchy of markups or comments created by users. You can navigate through the markups. A set of properties is generated for each markup. You can sort the markups in the tree according to each property by clicking the column headers. These properties are:

Property	Description
Markup Entity	Type of markup entity created.
Author	The name of the user who created the markup entity.
Last Modified	The date and time the markup entity was last modified.
Page	Page number of the original document on which the markup entity is created.
Layer	Markup layer on which the markup entity is created.


When a markup entity is created, it appears in the tree and the information is recorded and saved in the Markup file.

NOTE: Hover your mouse over an entity to display its author and date properties.

Filtering Markups

When viewing markups, you have the option to filter the Markup files or entities that are displayed based on their metadata information.

To do so, from the **Markup** menu, select **Filter** and then select one of the following options: By Author, By Entity Types, By Last Modified, By Page, and By Layer. The Filter Markup Visibility dialog appears.

*NOTE: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Markup Filter** .*

- To display markups created by a specific author, click the **Author** tab and select the check box next to the author's name. To remove an author's markup from the filter, deselect the associated check box. In the Markup Navigation Tree, a filter icon appears in the Author column header.
- To display markups by entity type, click the **Markup Entity** tab and select the check box next to the markup entity or entities. To remove a markup entity from the filter, deselect the associated check box. In the Markup Navigation Tree, a filter icon appears in the Markup Entity column header.
- To display markups based on when they were last modified, click the **Last Modified** tab. From the list, select one of the following options:

Option	Description
Anytime	Displays all markup entities.
Before	Displays all markup entities modified before the selected date.
After	Displays all markup entities modified after the selected date.
On	Displays all markup entities modified on the selected date.
Between	Displays all markup entities modified between the selected dates.

In the Markup Navigation Tree, a filter icon appears in the Last Modified column header.

- To display markups by page location, click the **Page** tab and select one of the following:

Option	Description
All pages	Displays markup entities on all the pages.
Current page	Displays markup entities on the currently selected page.
Page ranges	Displays the markup entities on the selected page range.

- To display markups by layers, click the **Layer** tab and select the check box next to the layer or layers. To remove a layer from the filter, deselect the associated check box. In the Markup Navigation Tree, a filter icon appears in the Layer column header.

*NOTE: To remove the filters, from the **Markup** menu, select **Filter**, and then select **Show All**.*

Working with Markup Files

Markups can be saved as separate **Markup files** while working with the same document. You have the option to add user information to the Markup file, save and create separate Markup files with different markup IDs, import and export Markup files, or change the active Markup file.

Saved States

When you create and save a Markup file, the view state of the file is also. View states include zoom level (extents), rotation and flip settings, transformation, section plane, and visibility. When creating markups for 3D files containing imported models, the imported design becomes part of the view state. For EDA files, you can save user-defined layers sets with markups.

See “Creating a User-Defined View”


State information is also saved with each markup entity. For instance, if you were at a certain zoom level when you created a markup entity, AutoVue saves the information with the markup entity. To “Go To” the state you were at when you created or modified the markup entity, from the Markup tree, right-click the markup entity and then select **Go To**.

Creating a Markup File

To create a Markup file:

TASK

1. View a file that you want to markup.
2. From the **Markup** menu, select **New**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **New Markup** .

RESULT:

AutoVue enters Markup mode and a new Markup file appears in the Markup Navigation Tree.

See Also “Creating a Markup Layer”

Entering Markup Information

When creating a markup you can provide user information that you can save with the markup.

From the **Markup** menu, select **Properties**. The Markup Information dialog appears.

Enter a user name, department, company name, company location, and telephone number. Click **OK** to save your markup information and to close the dialog.

Saving a New Markup File

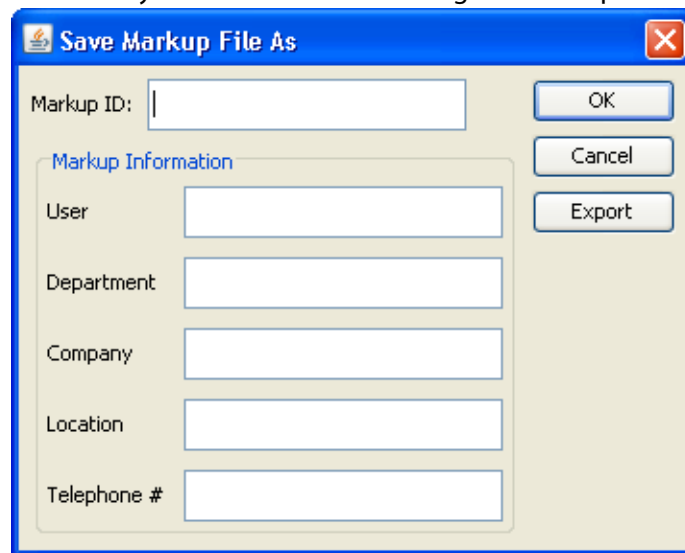
To save a new Markup file:

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Save**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Save Markup** .

STEP RESULT: The Save Markup File As dialog appears displaying the Markup Information that you entered when creating the markup.



The image shows a 'Save Markup File As' dialog box. It has a blue title bar with a close button. Inside, there is a 'Markup ID:' label followed by a text input field. To the right of this field are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Export' buttons. Below the 'Markup ID' field is a section titled 'Markup Information' which contains five labels with corresponding text input fields: 'User', 'Department', 'Company', 'Location', and 'Telephone #'.

2. In the **Markup ID** field, enter an ID consisting of any combination of characters or numbers.
3. Click **OK**.

RESULT: The Markup file is saved. The markups and the Markup file remain displayed in the workspace and in the Markup Navigation tree.



Opening Markup Files

To open a Markup file:

TASK

1. View a file that has existing markups.

2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Open**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open Markup(s)** , or from the bottom-left corner of the status bar, you can click **Markup Indicator** .

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If the Markup Indicator icon does not display, then the file you opened has no existing markups associated to it.

STEP RESULT: The Markup Files dialog appears.

3. From the Markup list, select the check box next to Markup file you want to open.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you select more than one Markup file, the Active Markup menu lets you select which one of them is initially active. See “Setting the Active Markup File” for more information.


4. Click **OK**.

RESULT: The selected markup or markups appear in the workspace on top of the original file.

NOTE: When you select more than one Markup file, the markups display simultaneously.

Saving an Existing Markup File

To save a modified existing Markup file, from the **Markup** menu, select **Save**.

NOTE: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Save Markup** .

If you have multiple markups open that you have modified and want to save them all, from the **Markup** menu, select **Save All**.


To save an existing markup as a new markup, from the **Markup** menu, select **Save As**.

Importing a Markup File

To import a Markup file on top of the original file:

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Open**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open Markup(s)** .

STEP RESULT: The Markup Files dialog appears.

2. Click **Import**.

STEP RESULT: The Select Markup File to Import dialog appears.

3. Navigate to the markup file that you want to import and select it.
 4. Click **Open**.
-


RESULT: The imported Markup file appears in the workspace on top of the original file.

Exporting a Markup File

To export a Markup file:

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Save As**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: For a new Markup file, you can also click **Save Markup** .

STEP RESULT: The Save Markup File As dialog appears.

2. Click **Export**.
STEP RESULT: The Save As dialog appears.
 3. Navigate to the location where you want to export the Markup file.
 4. Enter file name.
 5. Click **Save**.
-

RESULT:

The Markup file is exported to the selected directory.

The default format saved is *Markup Files (*.*)*, but you can select another one. In the Save as Type list, there are six formats to choose from:



- Markup Files (*.*)
- DXF Output (*.dxf)
- AutoCAD DWG (*.dwg)
- Microstation DGN Output (*.dgn)

Setting the Active Markup File

A file can have several Markup files. When you open several Markup files simultaneously, you can set one as the active Markup file. Any changes you make is applied to the current active markup.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Open**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open Markup(s)** , or from the bottom-left corner of the status bar, you can click **Markup Indicator** . If the Markup Indicator icon does not display, the file you opened has no existing markups associated to it.

STEP RESULT: The Markup Files dialog appears.

2. From the Markup list, select the markup or markups you want to open.
3. From the Active Markup list, select the markup you want to make active.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: An active markup displays in bold in the Markup Navigation Tree.

4. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT:

The selected markups appear in the AutoVue workspace.

Changing the Active Markup File

When you have multiple Markup files open, you can change the active markup.

NOTE: An active markup displays in bold in the Markup Navigation Tree.

Take one of the following steps:

- In the tree, right-click the name of the Markup file you want to make active, then select **Set Active**.
- From the Markup toolbar, you can set the active markup by selecting a markup from the list on the Markup Properties toolbar.
- Take the following steps:

From the **Markup** menu, select **Set Active**. The Set Active Markup dialog appears. From the Select Active Markup list, select the markup you want to make active. Click **OK** to make the selected Markup file active.

Working with Markup Layers

Markup files can be divided into layers with each layer having its own unique name. You can create, name, and color layers to organize your work. For example, different colors can indicate time priorities and each layer can contain markups with a common purpose.

When working with markup layers, you can view layers individually or in combination, add, rename, or delete layers. You can also specify a different color for each layer.

NOTE: The default layer color is red.

See Also “Moving a Markup Entity to Another Layer”

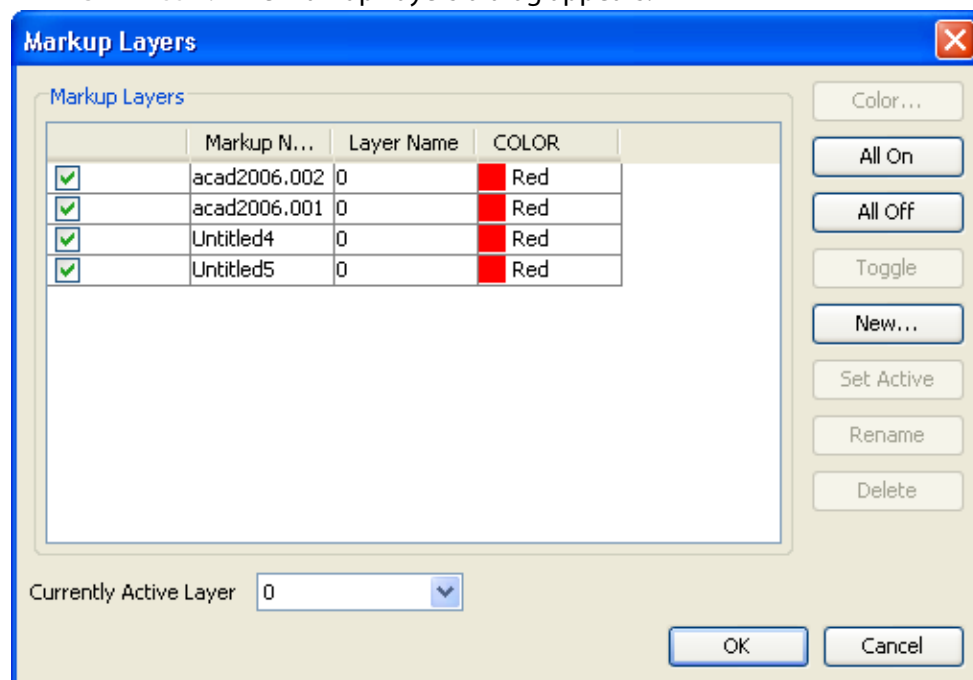
Creating a Markup Layer

From the Markup Layers dialog, you can create a markup layer.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.

STEP RESULT: The Markup Layers dialog appears.



2. Click **New**.

STEP RESULT: The New Markup Layer dialog appears.

3. Enter a name for the markup layer.

4. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The new markup layer is added to the list in the Markup Layers dialog.
 5. To change the color of the new layer, click **Color**.
STEP RESULT: The Layer Color dialog appears. The default layer color is red.
 6. Select a color and click **OK**.
 7. Click **OK** to close the Markup Layers dialog.
-

Setting the Active Markup Layer

A markup can have several layers and you can set a layer as the active markup layer. When a markup layer is active, all modifications you make are applied to that markup layer. There are two ways in which to set a layer as active:

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.
STEP RESULT: The Markup Layers dialog appears.
 2. You can perform one of the following:
 - a From the Markup Layers list, select the layer you want to make active, and click **Set Active**.
 - b From the Currently Active Layer list, select the layer you want to make active.
 3. Click **OK**.
-



Changing the Color of a Markup Layer

After you create a markup layer, you have the option to change the color of its markup entities.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**. The Markup Layers dialog appears.
2. From the Markup Layers list, select the markup layer whose color you want to change.
3. Click **Color**.
STEP RESULT: The Layer Color dialog appears.
4. Select a **Color**.

5. Click **OK**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Only the entities that were created with the *Bylayer*  color defined in the Markup Layers dialog will change color. Any entities that were created using the color options from the Markup Properties toolbar, will override the Bylayer  color and will not change.

6. Click **OK** to close the Markup Layers dialog.
-

Renaming a Markup Layer

After you create a markup layer, you have the option to rename the layer.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**. The Markup Layers dialog appears.
 2. From the Markup Layers list, select the markup layer you want to rename.
 3. Click **Rename**.
STEP RESULT: The New Markup Layer dialog appears.
 4. Enter the new layer name.
 5. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The markup layer is assigned the new name.
 6. Click **OK** to close the Markup Layers dialog.
-

Toggling between Markup Layers

From the Markup Layers dialog, you can choose to show or hide a layer and its associated markup entities.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**. The Markup Layers dialog appears.

2. To show/hide a layer or layers, perform one of the following:
 - a Select a layer and click **Toggle**. The layer's check box will switch between selected and deselected. To view all the markup layers, click **All On**. To hide all markup layers click **All Off**.
 - b From the Markup Layers list, select the check box next to the layer or layers you want visible, and deselect the check box next to the layer or layers you want to hide.
3. Click **OK**.

RESULT:

The markup entities belonging to the selected layer or layers appear in the workspace on top of the original file.

Deleting a Markup Layer

From the Markup Layers dialog, you can choose to delete a selected layer and its associated markup entities.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.
STEP RESULT: The Markup Layers dialog appears.
2. From the Markup Layers list, select the markup layer you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Click **OK**.

RESULT:

The layer or layers are deleted along their associated entities.

Moving a Markup Entity to Another Layer

Once you create a markup entity, it is possible to assign it to a pre-existing markup layer.

TASK

1. Select the markup entity or entities that you want to move.
2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Move to Layer**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click the markup entity, select **Format**, and then select **Move to Layer**.

STEP RESULT: The Move to Layer dialog appears.

3. From the Layers list, select the destination layer.
 4. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT:

The selected markup entity or entities are moved to the selected layer. Only markup entities using the ByLayer color will change to the new layer's color.

See Also “Working with Markup Entities”

Consolidating Markup Files

The **Consolidate** option allows you to create a new Markup file that combines copies of selected layers of different Markup files. During the review cycle, consolidation simplifies document revisions by providing the author with one combined Markup file instead of several Markup files. Note that the Consolidate option is only active when more than one Markup file is opened.

TASK

1. Open the Markup files that you want to consolidate.
2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Consolidate**.

STEP RESULT: The Consolidate Markups dialog appears.

3. Select the markup layers that you want to consolidate into one file. To select multiple layers, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select all the layers click **Select All**, and to deselect all the layers click **UnSelect All**.

4. In the **Output ID** field, enter an ID for the new Markup file.
 5. If you want to open the newly consolidated markup as the active markup, select the **Open as Active Markup** check box.
 6. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT:

The consolidated Markup file is saved. If you selected **Open as Active Markup**, the consolidated markup opens and is set as the active markup.

Marking up 2D and 3D Files






AutoVue provides a number of markup options that display the same behavior when marking up 2D or 3D files. You can add markup entities such as attachments, hyperlinks, signoffs, and stamps.

See “2D-Specific Markups” for information on markup entities that are specific to 2D files.

See “3D-Specific Markups” for information on markup entities that are specific to 3D files.

NOTE: When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel the action.

The following tables lists common markup entities for 2D and 3D files.


Option	Description
Attachment	<p>Add an attachment entity to the markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Attachment .</p> <p>See “Adding an Attachment”</p>
Hyperlink	<p>Attaches a hyperlink as a markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Hyperlink .</p> <p>See “Adding a Hyperlink”</p>
Intellistamp	<p>Adds a stamp to a document in a connected and disconnected environment. Includes specific document and user information (metadata) pulled directly from the DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Intellistamp .</p> <p>See “AutoVue Mobile” “Creating an Intellistamp”</p>
Signoff	<p>Creates an approval stamp containing information about the markup author, date and time of creation.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Signoff .</p> <p>See “Adding Signoff Entities”</p>
Stamp	<p>Adds a stamp markup to the document.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Stamp .</p> <p>See “Adding a Stamp”</p>

Adding an Attachment

In AutoVue, you can attach a file of any type (for example, text, audio, or video) as a markup entity. The attachment is embedded into the markup entity and displays as an icon on the display.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Attachment**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Attachment** .

2. Click on the drawing where you want to add an attachment.

STEP RESULT: The **Attach File** dialog appears.

3. In the **Link Name** field, enter a name for the attachment. Optionally, you can also provide a brief description of the attachment in the **Description** box.
4. In the **URL** field, enter the path to the file or click **Browse**. The **File Open** dialog appears.
5. Select the file or click **Browse** and click **OK**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can attach any local file or any DMS file.

6. From the Open In list, select one the following:
 - **A new applet window:** Opens the attachment in a new AutoVue window.
 - **Current applet window:** Opens the attachment in the current AutoVue window.
 - **Associated application:** Opens the attachment in its associated application.
7. Click **OK** to close the Attach File dialog.

STEP RESULT: The attachment appears on the markup workspace and in the Markup Navigation Tree.

8. Right-click in the workspace to complete the attachment.
-

Opening an Attachment

To open an attachment, do one of the following:

- Double-click on the attachment icon in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree.
 - If **A new applet window** was selected while attaching the file, it will open the attachment in a new AutoVue window.
 - If **Current applet window** was selected while attaching the file, it will open in the current AutoVue window.

- If **Associated application** was selected while attaching the file, it will open in its associated application.
- In the tree, right-click the attachment entity in the tree, select **Attachment**, and then select one of the following:
 - **Open:** The attachment opens in AutoVue.

If **A new applet window** was selected while attaching the file, it will open in a new AutoVue window.

If **Current applet window** was selected while attaching the file, it will open in the current AutoVue window.
 - **Open With:** You have the option to open the attachment with **AutoVue** or its **Associated Application**.

Editing an Attachment

TASK

1. In the Markup Navigation Tree, right-click the attachment and select **Edit**, or double-click the markup entity.

STEP RESULT: The Attach File dialog appears.

2. Make your changes and click to **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The dialog closes and modifications are implemented.

Adding a Hyperlink

A hyperlink is a link between the current file and a new file or application. You can create hyperlinks in your current file so that your files and applications outside AutoVue are only a click away. The main benefit of adding hyperlinks is that the files are accessible from one location but the information is referenced, not duplicated. This ensures a manageable file size when loading. If changes need to be made to a linked file, they need to be done in one location—the linked file itself.

Creating a Hyperlink

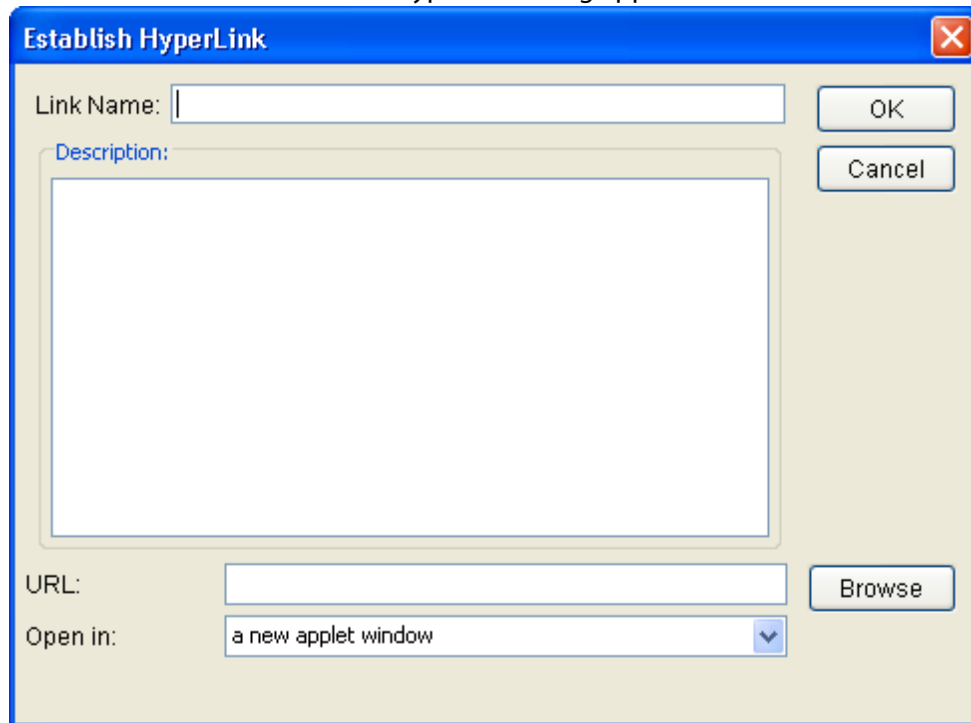
TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Hyperlink**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Hyperlink** .

- Click a point on the document where you want to place the hyperlink.

STEP RESULT: The Establish Hyperlink dialog appears.



- Enter a **Link Name**.
- Enter a **Description** (optional).
- Type the **URL** or click **Browse** to locate the file that you want to link to.
- From the Open In list, select where you want the hyperlink to open.

Open in	Description
A new applet window	Opens the file in another AutoVue window.
Current applet window	Opens the file in the current AutoVue window.
A new browser window	Opens the file in the default browser window.
A current browser window	Opens the file in the current browser window.

- Click **OK**.
- Right-click to exit hyperlink creation mode.

RESULT:

The hyperlink appears on the Markup.

Opening a Hyperlink

To open a hyperlink, double-click on it from the workspace.

The hyperlink file opens in the window you selected in the Establish Hyperlink dialog.

Editing a Hyperlink

TASK

1. In the Markup Navigation Tree or from the workspace, select the hyperlink that you want to edit.
 2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Edit Hyperlink**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click the hyperlink and select **Format**, and then select **Edit Hyperlink**.
STEP RESULT: The Establish Hyperlink dialog appears.
 3. Edit the information that you want.
 4. Click **OK** to close the Establish Hyperlink dialog.
-

RESULT:

The changes are saved.

Deleting a Hyperlink

TASK

1. In the Markup Navigation Tree or from the workspace, select the hyperlink that you want to delete.
 2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Remove Hyperlink**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click the hyperlink and select **Format**, and then select **Remove Hyperlink**. You can also delete the hyperlink by selecting the hyperlink and pressing the Delete key on your keyboard.
-

RESULT:

The hyperlink is deleted.

Adding Signoff Entities

The **Signoff** entity is an approval stamp containing information about the markup author, date, and time of creation. You create a signoff entity when the Markup file is finalized.

***NOTE:** If a markup is modified after a signoff is created, the signoff disappears (is rescinded) from the workspace but remains in the Markup Navigation tree. Double-click on the signoff entity in the tree to view the signoff history—the person who rescinded the signoff, the creation date, and the drop date.*

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Signoff**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Signoff** .

2. Click and drag to create a box on the drawing where you want the signoff.

STEP RESULT: The Signoff dialog appears displaying details of the signoff.

3. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT:

The signoff entity appears on the drawing and in the tree, and displays the author, creation date, and approval date.

Rescinding the Signoff

You can rescind a signoff on a drawing.

TASK

1. In the Markup Navigation tree or in the workspace, double-click the signoff markup entity.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Signoff** .

STEP RESULT: The Signoff dialog appears.

2. Click **Rescind**.
-

RESULT:

The signoff disappears from the drawing but remains in the Markup Navigation Tree.

Re-Approving a Signoff

To re-approve the signoff that has been rescinded:

TASK

1. In the tree, double-click the signoff markup entity. The Signoff dialog appears
 2. Click **Approve**.
-

RESULT:

The signoff entity re-appears on the drawing and the tree.

Viewing the History of a Signoff

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Signoff**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Signoff** .

2. Click **History**.

STEP RESULT: The Signoff History dialog appears displaying the author, date and time the signoff was created.

3. Click **Cancel** to close the Signoff dialog.
-

Creating an Intellistamp

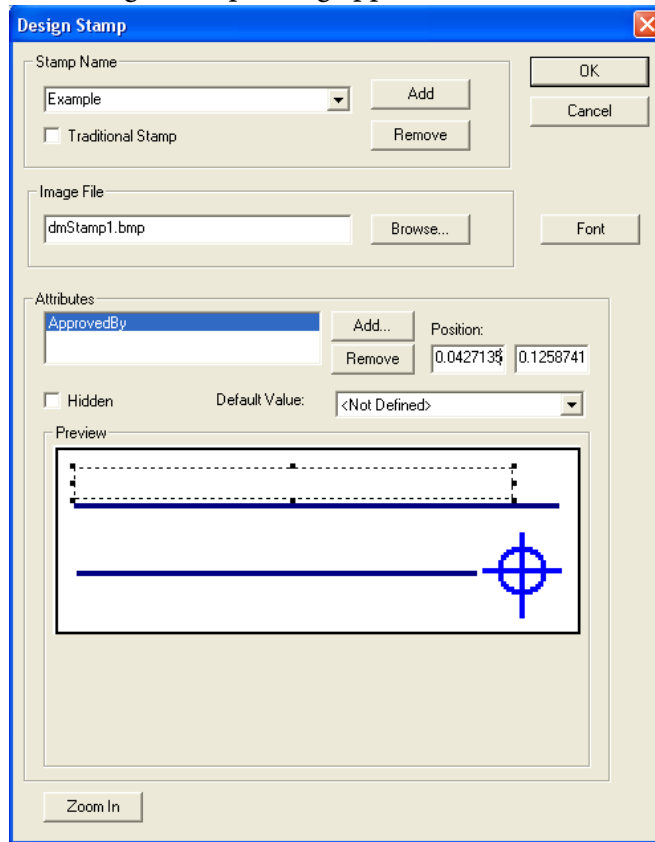
The Intellistamp markup entity lets you create a stamp that includes document and user information (metadata) pulled directly from the backend DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system.

See Also “AutoVue Mobile”

Designing an Intellistamp

To design an Intellistamp, you must use the Design Stamp tool that is included with the AutoVue installation. To launch the tool, go to the *<AutoVue installation>\bin* folder and double-click *stampdlg.exe*.

The Design Stamp dialog appears.



The following sections describe how to design an Intellistamp with the Design Stamp tool.

TASK

1. From the Stamp Name section, click **Add**.
STEP RESULT: The Add New Stamp dialog appears.
2. Enter a name for the Intellistamp and then click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The Open dialog appears.
3. Select a background image for the Intellistamp and then click **Open**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To change the background image once the Intellistamp is created, click Browse, and then select a new background.
STEP RESULT: The selected image appears in the Preview window of the Design Stamp dialog. The Image File field displays the image file path.
4. To set the selected Intellistamp as read-only, select the **Traditional Stamp** check box.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The Traditional Stamp retains the same attributes (size, position, and so on) as defined when the intellistamp is created.
5. To remove an Intellistamp, from the Stamp Name box, select an Intellistamp and then click **Remove**.

6. To add an attribute, click **Add**.
STEP RESULT: The Add New Attribute dialog appears.
7. In the **Name** field, enter an attribute name that is defined in the backend system.
8. From the **Default Value** box, select one of the following values:
 - **<Not Defined>**: The attribute retains the same value as defined in the backend system.
 - **\$user**: For the Desktop deployment of AutoVue the operating system user name is assigned to the attribute. For the Client/Server deployment of AutoVue, the user session name is assigned to the attribute.
 - **\$date**: The current date and time is assigned to the attribute.
9. To prevent users from modifying the attribute, select the **Read Only** check box.
10. To hide the attribute from appearing on the Intellistamp, select the **Hidden** check box. However, the attributes are viewable from the DMS Attributes dialog.
11. When you are done adding an attribute, click **Add**.
STEP RESULT: The Add New Attribute dialog closes and the new attribute is added to the Attributes area. The attribute displays as a resizable box in the Preview window.
12. To change the value of an existing attribute, from the Attributes list, select the attribute and then select a new value from the **Default Value** box.
13. To remove an attribute, from the Attributes list, select the attribute and then click **Remove**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To add another attribute, repeat steps 5 through 10.
14. To change the position of the attribute box in the preview window, you can either click and drag the box or enter the (X,Y) coordinates in the **Position** fields.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The Position fields take values between 0 and 1, where (0,0) is the default setting.
15. To enlarge the preview, click **Zoom In**.
STEP RESULT: The Zoom In dialog appears. This dialog provides an enlarged version of the options available in the Design Stamp dialog.
16. To close the Zoom In dialog, click **Zoom Out**.
17. To hide an attribute, select an attribute from the Attributes box, and then select the **Hidden** check box. The hidden attributes will not appear on the Intellistamp, however they are viewable from the DMS Attributes dialog.

18. To change the font of the attributes, click **Font**.

- a From the Script box, you can select Western script or Hebrew script.
- b The font previews in the Sample window.
- c Click **OK** to implement the font changes.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Repeat to add multiple Intellistamps.

RESULT:


To view the available Intellistamps, select an Intellistamp from the Stamp Name box; the Intellistamp previews in the Preview window.

Adding an Intellistamp

To add an Intellistamp markup entity to a document, do the following:

TASK

1. Enter Markup mode.
2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Intellistamp**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Intellistamp** .

3. In the workspace, click and drag a box to the desired Intellistamp size.

STEP RESULT: The Intellistamp dialog appears.

4. From the Choose Stamp box, select the desired Intellistamp.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To resize the Intellistamp, select **Enable Resizing**.

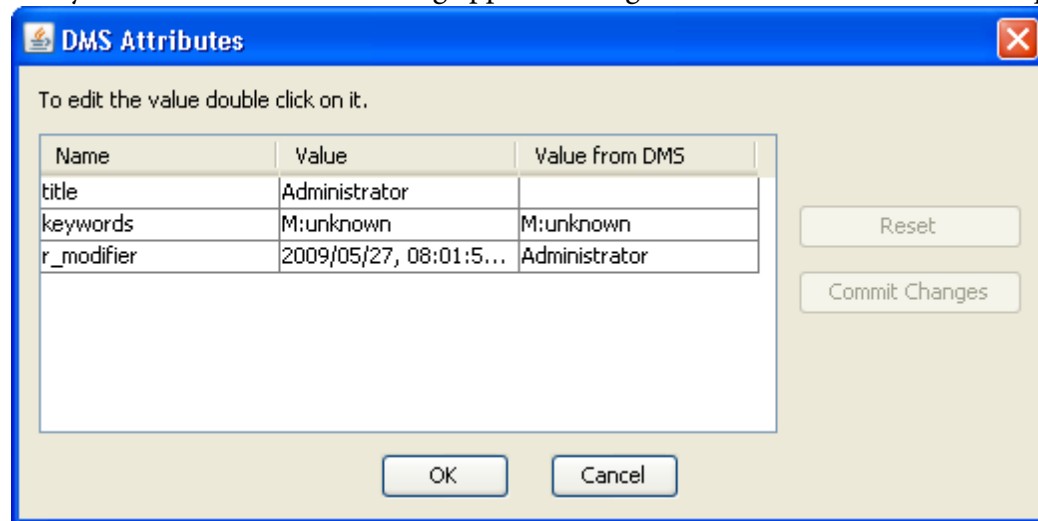
5. Click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The Intellistamp dialog closes and the Intellistamp appears in workspace and in the Markup Entity Tree.

6. Right-click the workspace to complete the Intellistamp placement.
-

Viewing/Modifying Intellistamp Attributes

You can view the attributes of an Intellistamp by double-clicking the Intellistamp markup entity. The DMS Attributes dialog appears listing all attributes of the Intellistamp.



NOTE: All attributes tagged hidden also display in the Attributes dialog.

The dialog contains three columns that include attribute values defined in the design stage:

- The *Name* column displays the attribute name as defined in the design stage. It will either display the backend DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system-defined attribute name or the user-defined name.
- The *Value* column displays the assigned value. If the attribute is not marked as *read-only* in the design stage, you can modify the value.
- The *Value from DMS* column displays the value assigned from the backend system.

Intellistamp in a DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM System Integration

If you view the Intellistamp markup entity in AutoVue with a backend system integration, the **Commit Changes** and **Reset** buttons appear in the DMS Attributes dialog:

- Click the **Commit Changes** button to upload the changes made to the DMS Attributes dialog to the backend system.
- Click the **Reset** button to retrieve the attribute values defined in the backend system.

When you are done modifying the attribute, click **OK** to finalize your changes and to close the DMS Attributes dialog.

Intellistamp in a Mobile Pack

If you view the Intellistamp markup entity from a Mobile Pack, the **Commit Changes** and **Reset** buttons appear in the DMS Attributes dialog:

- Click the **Commit Changes** button to upload the changes made to the DMS Attributes dialog to the Mobile Pack.

- Click the **Reset** button to reset the Intellistamp attribute values to those defined in the Mobile Pack.


When you are done modifying the attribute, click **OK** to finalize your changes and to close the DMS Attributes dialog.

Adding a Stamp

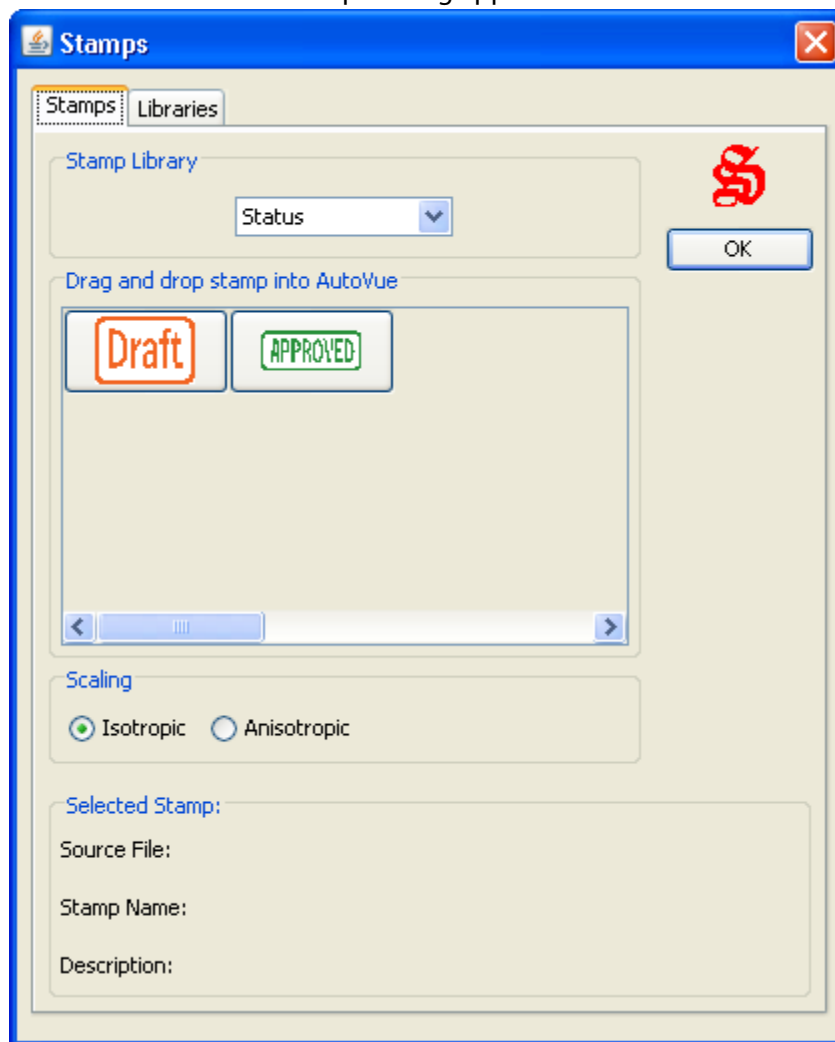
A Stamp is a graphical entity, such as a company logo. Before a graphic entity can be used as a stamp, it must be added to a Stamp Library. You can create a Stamp Library and add stamps to it. You can also add or remove stamps from existing libraries.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Stamp**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Stamp** .


STEP RESULT: The Stamps dialog appears.



2. Click the **Stamps** tab.
 3. From the Stamp Library list, select the library from which you want to select a stamp.
STEP RESULT: The stamps appear for the selected library.
 4. Click **Isotropic** if you want to scale the stamp proportionately.
 5. Click **Anisotropic** if you want to scale the stamp disproportionately.
 6. Drag the stamp onto the workspace.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To add more stamps, repeat steps 3 to 5.
STEP RESULT: The stamp appears on the drawing and in the Markup Navigation Tree.
 7. Close the Stamps dialog.
-

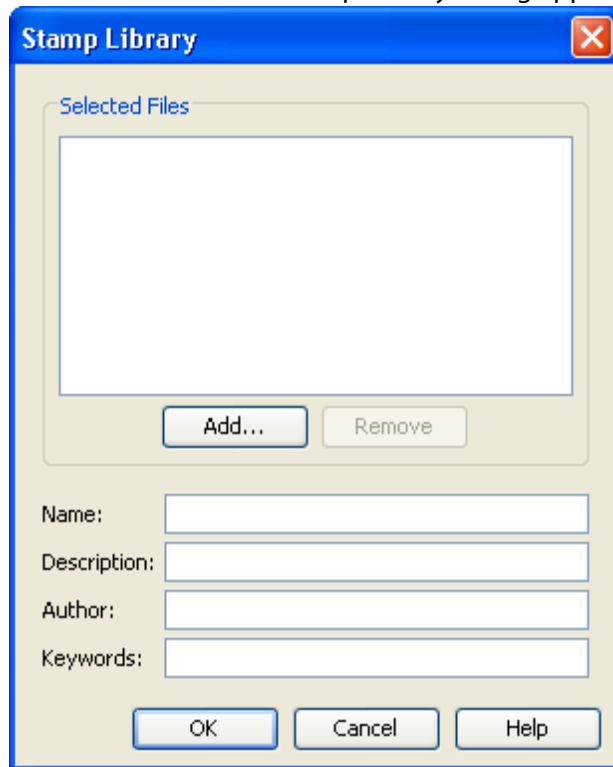
Creating a New Stamp Library

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Stamp**. The Stamps dialog appears.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Stamp** .
2. Click the **Libraries** tab.

3. Click **Create**.

STEP RESULT: The Stamp Library dialog appears.



4. Enter the library name, description, author, and keywords in their respective fields.
5. To add a stamp to the library, click **Add**.

STEP RESULT: The Open dialog appears.

6. Browse to locate the stamp you want to add, and then click **Open**.


ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To add more stamps, repeat steps 4 to 6. To remove a stamp, select the stamp and click **Remove**.

STEP RESULT: The file appears in the Stamp Files list.

7. Close the Stamps dialog.
-

Deleting a Stamp Library

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Stamp**. The Stamps dialog appears.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Stamp** .
2. Click the **Libraries** tab.
3. From the Stamp Libraries list, select the library that you want to delete.

4. Click **Delete**.

STEP RESULT: The library disappears from the list and from the Stamp Library list under the **Stamps** tab.

5. Close the Stamps dialog.

2D-Specific Markups




AutoVue provides a variety of user-friendly markup options that you can use when marking up 2D files. You can create entities such as arcs, boxes, circles, clouds, lines, and polygons. You can draw a leader with multi-line segments and add text to it.














NOTE: When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.



2D Markup Entities

You can create many different types of 2D markup entities. To access the markup entities, from the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**. The available 2D markup entities are listed in the following table.

NOTE: To complete a markup entity (for example, to finish creating a box), simply right-click in the AutoVue workspace. If you do not right-click to complete entity creation, you will continue in the markup creation mode of that entity.

Markup Entity	Entity Information
Arc	Click and drag the mouse to draw an Arc. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Arc  .
Box	Click and drag to draw a rectangle. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Box  To draw a square instead of a rectangle, press and hold the Shift key while you click and drag.
Cloud	Click and drag to draw a Cloud. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Cloud  .

Markup Entity	Entity Information
Circle	<p>Click and drag to draw a circle.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Circle .</p> <p>To draw a circle instead of an ellipse, press and hold the Shift key while you click and drag.</p>
Freestyle	<p>Create freestyle entities.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Freestyle .</p> <p>See “Adding a Freestyle Entity”</p>
Highlight	<p>Click and drag to highlight a boxed area.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Highlight .</p> <p>The highlighted box will be filled with a transparent color.</p>
Leader	<p>Create leader entities.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Leader .</p> <p>See “Adding a Leader”</p>
Line	<p>Click and drag to draw a line.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Line .</p> <p>To draw a line and force it to be aligned to the closer axis, horizontal or vertical, press and hold the Shift key while you click and drag.</p> <p>See “Aligning a Line Segment to the Vertical or Horizontal Axes”</p>
Measurement	<p>Create markup measure entities.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Distance , Area , Angle , Arc , or Minimum Distance .</p> <p>See “Creating 2D non-Vector Markup Measure Entities” “Creating 2D Vector Markup Measure Entities” “Creating EDA Markup Measure Entities”</p>
Note	<p>Add a note to the markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Note .</p> <p>See “Adding a Note”</p>
Polygon	<p>Click and drag to draw a polygon.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Polygon .</p>
Polyline	<p>Click and drag to draw a polyline.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Polyline .</p> <p>To force a line segment in a Polyline entity to be aligned to the closer axis, horizontal or vertical, press and hold the Shift key while you click and drag for that line segment.</p> <p>See “Aligning a Line Segment to the Vertical or Horizontal Axes”</p>


Markup Entity	Entity Information
Stamp	Create stamp markup entities. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Stamp  . See “Adding a Stamp”
Text	Add text to the markup. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Text  . See “Adding Text”

Adding a Freestyle Entity

You can create a freestyle markup entity. You have the option of making the entity non-contiguous or contiguous.


Creating a Contiguous Freestyle Entity

TASK

- From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Freestyle**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Freestyle** .
- Click a point on the drawing where you want to start the Freestyle entity.
- Move the cursor to create the Freestyle entity.
- Right-click to end the Freestyle entity.

Creating a Non-Contiguous Freestyle Entity

TASK

- From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Freestyle**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Freestyle** .
- Click a point on the drawing where you want to start the Freestyle entity.
- Move the cursor to create the Freestyle entity.
- Click a point on the drawing where you want to interrupt the Freestyle entity.
- Click another point on the drawing where you want to restart the Freestyle entity.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can interrupt the Freestyle entity as many times as you like by repeating steps 4 and 5.
- Right-click to end the Freestyle entity.

Aligning a Line Segment to the Vertical or Horizontal Axes

A line segment drawn with the Free Snap snapping mod can be forced to align with the closer horizontal or vertical axis. You can also take an existing line segment and have it align with the closer axis. The types of line segments that you can align are lines, line segments of leaders and polylines, and measure entities.


See “2D Vector Snapping Modes” for more information Free Snap.

TASK

1. To draw and force a line segment, press and hold the **Shift** key while you click and drag for that line segment.
 2. To force an existing line segment, click and hold the left mouse button on the line segment, then press and hold the **Shift** key.
 3. When you see that the line segment is horizontal or vertical, release the left mouse button, then release the **Shift** key.
-

Adding a Leader

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Leader**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Leader** .
2. Click a point on the document where define the Leader anchor point.
3. Move the cursor to draw the Leader.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To draw a Leader segment and force it to be aligned to the closest axis, vertical or horizontal, hold the **Shift** key while moving the cursor.
4. To draw a Leader with multiple line segments, repeat steps 2 and 3 as often as you like. You can click, then drag as often as you like.
5. Right-click to end the Leader. A text box appears at the end of the Leader.
6. In the text box, enter the text you want to attach to the Leader.
STEP RESULT: The height of the text box will resize to fit the entered text.
7. To change text box font properties, from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Font**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the respective font property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the font type, style, and size
STEP RESULT: The Font dialog appears allowing you to change the font type, style, and size.
8. Click **OK** to implement the font changes and to close the Font dialog.

9. To change the line properties or fill color of the Leader, select the Leader, then from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select the property or properties you want to change.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the respective line property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the line style, line thickness, fill types, and fill colors.

10. Right-click outside the text area to complete the modification.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To edit the Leader text, double-click the Leader in the tree or in the workspace.

STEP RESULT: The text appears on the drawing and in the Markup Navigation Tree.

Creating 2D non-Vector Markup Measure Entities

When marking up 2D non-vector files, in addition to all the markup options available for 2D files, you can create markup measure entities. The measure options in Markup mode work a bit differently than in View mode.



See “2D-Specific Markups”



When measuring in Markup mode, the specified measurement lines and values are displayed on the current active markup layer as entities. These entities can be moved, resized, or deleted. You can also modify the font of a measure entity, align a “free snap” measure entity to the horizontal or vertical axis, as well as add units of measure and symbols to a measurement and have them appear on the drawing.

NOTE: When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.

Measure options vary between vector and non-vector files. For vector files, AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to fixed points on the drawing. For non-vector files, you can only “free snap”.

In Markup mode, you can choose from several measure options to create markup measure entities. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Measurement** to access the following measure options:

Option	Description
Angle	Measure the angle between selected points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Angle  .
Arc	Measure an arc entity. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Arc  .

Option	Description
Area	Measure a selected area. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Area  .
Distance	Measure the distance between two points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Distance  .

Measuring Distance


Use the **Distance** option to measure the distance between two specific points.

See “Changing Measurement Units and Symbols”

“Changing Font”

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The Measurement Entities dialog appears. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .

2. From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
3. Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
4. Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.

STEP RESULT: The measured line path appears as an entity on the current active markup.

5. Move the cursor and click a location on the drawing to display the measure distance.

STEP RESULT: The measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured distance, Delta-X, and Delta-Y appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.

6. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
7. You can click and drag the text box anywhere on the drawing.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To make another measurement, click **Reset**.


8. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Measuring Cumulative Distance

Use the **Cumulative Distance** option to measure the distance along a path of multi-faceted (adjoining) points.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The Measurement Entities dialog appears. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .

2. From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
3. Select **Cumulative**.

4. Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
5. Continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.

STEP RESULT: Each point is joined by a line.

6. Right-click to complete the measurement.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To make another measurement, click **Reset**.

STEP RESULT: The measured line path, cumulated measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The cumulated measured distance, Delta-X, and Delta-Y appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.

7. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Calibrating Distance

Calibrate the distance measurement.

TASK

1. Measure distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.
2. From the **Distance** tab, click **Calibrate**.

STEP RESULT: The Distance Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance

3. From the Units list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
4. Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.
5. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.

6. Click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The calibration result appears in the Measurement dialog.

7. Click **Close** to close the Distance tab.
-

Measuring Area

Use the **Area** option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Area**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Area** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.

2. From the Measured Area Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the area.
3. From the Perimeter Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the perimeter.
4. To cumulate a Net Area Result of different areas, select **Add**.
5. To subtract an area from the Net Area Result, select **Subtract**.
6. Select **Clear** to clear the Net Area Result field.
7. Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
8. Continue clicking points on the drawing to define the area you want to measure.

STEP RESULT: Each point is joined by a line.

9. Right click to complete the measurement.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To make another measurement, click **Reset**.

STEP RESULT: The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.


10. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Angle**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Angle** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.

2. From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
3. Click points on the drawing to define the angle you want to measure:
 - The first click defines the starting point of the angle measurement.
 - The second click defines the vertex of the angle measurement.
 - The third click defines the endpoint of the angle measurement.
 - The points are joined by angle arms with an arc connecting them.
4. Move the cursor to increase or decrease the radial and arc length.
5. Click again to complete the measurement.

STEP RESULT: The measured line path, angle measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured angle also appears in the Measurement Entities dialog.

6. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
7. You can click and drag the value box anywhere on the drawing.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To make another measurement, click **Reset**.

8. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to define an arc in the drawing and measure its radius, center and diameter.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Arc**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Arc** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.

2. From the Arc Info Length list, select the unit in which you want to measure the arc.

3. From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle. The options are degrees or radians.
 4. Select **Add Radius** if you want to measure the radius of the arc.
 5. Select **Add Diameter** if you want to measure the diameter of the arc.
 6. Click three points on the drawing to define the arc you want to measure.
STEP RESULT: The points are joined by an arc.
 7. Click again to complete the measurement.
STEP RESULT: The measured line path, arc measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer and in the Measurement Entities dialog.
 8. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
 9. You can click and drag the text box anywhere on the drawing.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To make another measurement, click **Reset**.
 10. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Calibrating an Arc

TASK

1. Measure an arc in the drawing.
 2. From the **Arc** tab, click **Calibrate**.
STEP RESULT: The Radius Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance.
 3. From the Units list, select a unit of measurement to which you want to calibrate the distance.
 4. Click **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value.
 5. Click **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
 6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The calibration results appear in the Arc tab.
 7. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Creating 2D Vector Markup Measure Entities





When marking up 2D vector files, in addition to all the markup options available for 2D files, you can create markup measure entities. The measure options in Markup mode work slightly different than in View mode.

Measure options vary between vector and non-vector files. For vector files, AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to fixed points on the drawing. For non-vector files, you can only “free snap”.

When measuring in Markup mode, the specified measurement lines and values are displayed on the current active markup layer as entities. These entities can be moved, resized, hidden or deleted. You can also modify the font of a measure entity, align a “free snap” measure entity to the horizontal or vertical axis, as well as add units of measure and symbols to a measurement and have them appear on the drawing.

NOTE: When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.





In Markup mode, you can choose from several measure options to create markup measure entities. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Measurement** to access the following measure options:

Option	Description
Angle	Measure the angle between selected points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Angle  .
Arc	Measure an arc entity. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Arc  .
Area	Measure a selected area. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Area  .
Distance	Measure the distance between two points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Distance  .

2D Vector Snapping Modes

The available **snapping modes** allow you to click to precise geometrical points on a drawing. For example, if you select **Snap to End-Point** and you move the cursor over an end-point of a line, the end-point will be highlighted by a snap box.

The snapping modes allow you to snap to the mid, center, and end-points of an entity:

Button	Snap to	Description
	End-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near a linear component's end point.
	Mid-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the halfway point of a linear component.
	Center-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the center of an elliptical component.
	Free snap	Allow snapping at any point on the drawing.

NOTE: When selecting a snapping mode you also have the option to select all snapping modes (**All On**) or to turn off snapping modes (**All Off**)


The below table lists snapping locations for certain measurements:

Measurement	Snapping Location
Area	Snaps to a shape on the drawing.
Arc	Snaps to an arc on the drawing.
Angle	Snap to two non-parallel lines.

Measuring Distance

Use the **Distance** option to measure the distance between two specific points.

TASK

- From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The Measurement Entities dialog appears. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .
- Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
- To select all snapping modes click **All On**. To clear all snapping modes click **All Off**.
- From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.

6. Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you selected **Cumulative**, continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.

STEP RESULT: The measured line path appears as an entity on the current active markup.

7. Move the cursor and click a location on the drawing to display the measure distance.

STEP RESULT: The measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured distance, Delta-X, and Delta-Y appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.

8. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.

9. You can click and drag the text box anywhere on the drawing.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To make another measurement, click **Reset**.

10. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Measuring Cumulative Distance

Use the **Cumulative Distance** option to measure the distance along a path of multi-faceted (adjoining) points.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.

2. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
3. To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.
4. From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
5. Select **Cumulative**.
6. Click the first entity to define the starting point.
7. Continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.

STEP RESULT: Each point is joined by a line.

8. Right-click to complete the measurement.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

STEP RESULT: The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y and the “Manhattan Distance” appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.

9. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Calibrating Distance

Calibrate the distance measurement.

TASK

1. Measure distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.
2. From the **Distance** tab, click **Calibrate**.

STEP RESULT: The Distance Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance

3. From the Units list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
4. Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.
5. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
6. Click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The calibration result appears in the Measurement dialog.


7. Click **Close** to close the Distance tab.
-

Measuring Area

Use the Area option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

TASK

1. From the **Analysis** menu, select **Measure**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Measure** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement dialog appears.


2. Click the **Area** tab.
3. Select **Between Points** if you want to measure the area between points on a drawing. The snapping modes are displayed.
4. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

5. Select **Shape** if you want to measure the area of a predefined shape on the drawing; the snapping modes are disabled.
 6. From the Measured Area Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the area.
 7. From the Perimeter Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the perimeter.
 8. In the Net Area Result section of the dialog, select **Add** to cumulate a net area result of different areas.
 9. To subtract an area from the Net Area Result, select **Subtract**.
 10. Select **Clear** to clear the Net Area Result.
 11. If you selected **Between Points**, click points on the drawing to define the area.
STEP RESULT: Each point is joined by a line. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement dialog.
 12. If you selected **Shape**, click the edge of the predefined shape that you want to measure.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click Reset to take another measurement.
STEP RESULT: The shape is highlighted. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement dialog.
 13. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the precise angle between points on a drawing.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Angle**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Angle** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.
2. Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the angle between three points. The snapping modes are displayed.
STEP RESULT: The snapping modes are displayed.
3. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
4. Select **Between 2 lines** if you want to measure the angle between two lines.
5. From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.

6. If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points on the drawing to define the angle. If you selected **Between 2 lines** click two lines on the drawing to define the angle.

STEP RESULT: Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them.

7. Click again to complete the measurement.

STEP RESULT: The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measurement appears in the Measurement Entities dialog.

8. To change the size of the arc, click and drag it to the desired size.
9. To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the markup.
10. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

11. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to measure the precise radius, length and angles of any arc on the model. It also calculates the center point location.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Arc**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Arc** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.

2. Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.

STEP RESULT: All arc and circles are highlighted on the model. Snapping modes are disabled.

3. Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points. Snapping modes are displayed.

4. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

STEP RESULT: All entities of the selected entity types are highlighted on the model.

5. From the Dist. Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the arc distance.

6. From the Angles Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.

7. If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the arc.

STEP RESULT: The points are joined by an arc.

8. If you selected **Arc Entity**, click the edge of an arc.

STEP RESULT: The arc is highlighted.

9. Click to complete the measurement.
STEP RESULT: The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.
10. To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the markup.
11. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
12. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.

Calibrating an Arc

TASK

1. Measure an arc in the drawing.
 2. From the **Arc** tab, click **Calibrate**.
STEP RESULT: The Radius Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance.
 3. From the Units list, select a unit of measurement to which you want to calibrate the distance.
 4. Click **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value.
 5. Click **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
 6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The calibration results appear in the Arc tab.
 7. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Creating EDA Markup Measure Entities

When marking up EDA files, in addition to all the markup options available for 2D files, you can create markup measure entities. The measure options in Markup mode work slightly different than in View mode.






See “2D-Specific Markups”

NOTE: When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.

When measuring in Markup mode, the specified measurement lines and values are displayed on the current active markup layer as entities. These entities can be moved, resized, or deleted. You can also modify the font of a measure entity, align a “free snap” measure entity to the horizontal or vertical axis, as well as add units of measure and symbols to a measurement and have them appear on the drawing.

AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to geometrical or electrical points on the drawing.









In Markup mode, you can choose from several measure options to create markup measure entities. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Measurement** to access the following measure options:

Option	Description
Angle	Measure the angle between selected points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Angle  .
Arc	Measure an arc entity. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Arc  .
Area	Measure a selected area. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Area  .
Distance	Measure the distance between two points. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Distance  .
Minimum Distance	Measure the minimum distance between entities. From the Markup Entity toolbar, click Minimum Distance  .

EDA Snapping Modes

The *snapping modes* allow you to click to precise geometrical or electrical points. For example, when you select **Snap to Pin**, move the cursor over the pin you want to select until the pin is highlighted, then click. Highlight and click a second pin to measure the distance between them.


The snapping modes allow you to snap to the middle, center, and end-points of an entity, as well as a pin, via, and symbol. The following table outlines the available snapping modes:

Button	Snap To	Description
	End-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the component's end point.
	Mid-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the halfway point of a linear component.
	Center-point	Geometric snap mode where a snap box appears when moving the cursor near the center of an elliptical component.
	Pin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches a pin.
	Via origin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches a via.
	Symbol origin	Electrical snap mode where a snap box appears when the cursor touches the entire component.
	Free snap	Allows snapping at any point on the drawing.
	Nets	Snap to nets.

Measuring Distance

Use the **Distance** option to measure the distance between two specific points.

TASK


- From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.
- Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

3. To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.
 4. From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
 5. Click a point on the drawing to define the starting point.
 6. Click another point on the drawing to define the end point.
STEP RESULT: The points are joined by a line. The measured line path appears as an entity on the current active markup.
 7. Drag to move the measured line path.
 8. Click on the measured line path.
STEP RESULT: The measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y and the "Manhattan Distance" appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.
 9. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
 10. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Measuring Cumulative Distance

Use the **Cumulative Distance** option to measure the distance along a path of multi-faceted (adjoining) points.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Distance**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.
2. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
3. To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.
4. From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
5. Select **Cumulative**.
6. Click the first entity to define the starting point.
7. Continue clicking points along the path that you want to measure.
STEP RESULT: Each point is joined by a line.

8. Right-click to complete the measurement.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

STEP RESULT: The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y and the "Manhattan Distance" appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.

9. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.

Calibrating Distance

Calibrate the distance measurement.

TASK

1. Measure distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.

2. From the **Distance** tab, click **Calibrate**.

STEP RESULT: The Distance Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance

3. From the Units list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.

4. Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.

5. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.

6. Click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The calibration result appears in the Measurement dialog.

7. Click **Close** to close the Distance tab.
-

Measuring Area

Use the **Area** option to measure the area and perimeter of a region.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Area**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Area** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.


2. Select **Between Points** if you want to measure the area between points on a drawing. Snapping modes are displayed.

3. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.
 4. Select **Shape** if you want to measure the area of a predefined shape on the drawing.
 5. From the Measured Area Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the area.
 6. From the Perimeter Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the perimeter.
 7. To cumulate a Net Area Result of different areas, select **Add** in the Measurement Entities dialog.
 8. To subtract an area from the Net Area Result, select **Subtract**.
 9. Select **Clear** to clear the Net Area Result field.
 10. If you selected **Between Points**, click points on the drawing to define the area.
STEP RESULT: Each point is joined by a line and the measurement appears in the Measurement Entities dialog.
 11. If you selected **Shape**, click the edge of a predefined shape on the drawing.
STEP RESULT: The shape is highlighted.
 12. Right-click to complete the measurement.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
STEP RESULT: The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The area and perimeter measurements appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.
 13. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the angle between points on a drawing.

TASK


1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Angle**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Angle** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.
2. Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the angle between three points. Snapping modes are displayed.

3. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.
4. Select **Between 2 lines** if you want to measure the angle between two lines.
5. From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
6. If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the angle.
7. If you selected **Between 2 Lines**, click two lines to define the angle.
STEP RESULT: Angle arms appear with an arc connecting them.
8. Right-click to complete the measurement.
STEP RESULT: The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measured angle appears in the Measurement Entities dialog.
9. To change the size of the arc, click and drag the it to the desired size.
10. To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.
11. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
12. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.

Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to define an arc in the drawing and measure its radius, center and diameter.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Arc**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Arc** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.
2. Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points. Snapping modes are displayed.
3. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select all snapping modes, click **All On**. To deselect all snapping modes, click **All Off**.
4. Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.
5. From the Arc Info list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance of the arc.

6. From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
 7. Select **Add Radius** if you want measure the radius.
 8. Select **Add Diameter** if you want to measure the diameter.
 9. If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the arc.
STEP RESULT: The points are joined by an arc.
 10. If you selected an **Arc Entity**, click an edge of the arc.
STEP RESULT: The arc is highlighted.
 11. Click to complete the measurement.
STEP RESULT: The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.
 12. To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.
 13. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
 14. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Calibrating an Arc

TASK


1. Measure an arc in the drawing.
 2. From the **Arc** tab, click **Calibrate**.
STEP RESULT: The Radius Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance.
 3. From the Units list, select a unit of measurement to which you want to calibrate the distance.
 4. Click **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value.
 5. Click **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
 6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The calibration results appear in the Arc tab.
 7. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Measuring Minimum Distance


Use the **Minimum Distance** option to measure the minimum distance between entities. The available entities for snapping are nets, pins, vias and traces.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Minimum Distance**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Minimum Distance** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.


2. Click  **First Set** to select the entities that you want to measure from.
3. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you select **Net**, you cannot select any other type of entity.

4. Click the first set of entities on the drawing.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To clear the last set of entities you selected, click **Clear Set**.

STEP RESULT: The entities are highlighted.

5. Click  **Second Set** to select the entities that you want to measure to.
6. Click the second set of entities on the drawing.

STEP RESULT: The entities are highlighted in a different color.

7. From the Measured Min. Distance list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
8. Select **Zoom to Result**, if you want to zoom in on the measured value on the drawing.
9. Click **Compute**.

STEP RESULT: The minimum distance from the first set of entities to the second set is highlighted by a line. The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measurement, Delta-X, Delta-Y, and the Manhattan Distance appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.

10. To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.
11. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.

12. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.
-

Adding Text

With AutoVue, you can add a text box entity to a markup.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Text**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Text** .

2. Click and drag on the drawing to define the dimensions of the text box.

3. Click in the text box and enter the text you want to add.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The height of the text box will adjust to accommodate the text.

4. To change text box font properties, from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Font**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the respective font property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the font type, style, and size.

STEP RESULT: The Font dialog appears allowing you to change the font type, style, and size.

5. Click **OK** to implement the font changes and to close the Font dialog.

6. To change the line properties or fill color of the text box, select the text box, then from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select the property or properties you want to change.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the respective line property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the line style, line thickness, fill types, and fill colors.

7. Right-click outside the text area to complete the modification.

STEP RESULT: The text appears on the drawing and in the Markup Navigation Tree.

8. To move the text box click and drag it.

9. Click and drag the frame handles of the text box to enlarge it.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To edit the text, double-click the text box in the tree or in the workspace.

Hiding the box surrounding the text

TASK

1. Select the text box entity.

2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Markup Entity Attributes**.


STEP RESULT: The Markup Entity Properties dialog appears.

3. From the Text Box Visibility list, select **OFF**.
4. Click **OK**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To undo, repeat steps 1 through 4, except select **ON**.

STEP RESULT: The dialog closes and the text box is hidden.

Adding a Note

You can attach longer comments as a markup sticky note on the drawing. A note displays in the workspace as a standard size graphical symbol . Each note is labelled as *Note<n>*—where *n* represents the numerical order of occurrence of the note (for example, the first note is labelled as *Note1*). To read the note, double-click the entity to open it or move the mouse over the entity to display the tooltip.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Note**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Note** .

STEP RESULT: The Attach To dialog appears.

2. In the Attach To dialog, click the entity type that you want to attach the note to.
3. Select the entity on the model that you want to attach a note to.

STEP RESULT: The Note applet appears.

4. Type the text that you want in the applet.

5. From the **File** menu, select **Information**.

STEP RESULT: The Note Information dialog appears.

6. To change the default font, select **Font** and the type of font.

7. Close the Note applet.

STEP RESULT: The note symbol appears on the entity and in the Markup Navigation Tree.

8. Right-click outside the note area to complete the modification.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To edit a note, double-click on the note.



ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Whenever an entity is attached to a 3D model, the anchor point (the point at which the entity is attached) is highlighted by a small square. The square is visible only when the anchor point is visible. This feature allows you to precisely identify the location of the anchor point and whether the associated entities are visible or hidden.

Nesting Markup Entities

You can add the Attachment or Hyperlink markup entities as a nested child to any markup entity.

TASK

1. Add a markup entity to a 3D file (for example, a Text entity).
2. From the workspace or Markup Tree, select the Text entity.
3. From the **Markup** menu, select **Attachment** or **Hyperlink**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Attachment**  or **Hyperlink** .

RESULT:

In the Markup Tree, the selected markup entity appears as a child of the Text (parent) entity.

3D-Specific Markups

When marking up 3D files, you can attach text or a note, as well as create markup measure entities. The measure options in Markup mode work slightly different than in View mode.

NOTE: When you are creating a markup entity, you can press the **Escape** key to cancel.

3D Markup Entities

You can create many different types of markup entities. To access the markup entities, from the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**. The markup entities are:

Option	Description
	To complete a markup entity (for example, to finish creating a box), simply right-click in the AutoVue workspace.

Option	Description
Text	<p>Add text to the markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click 3D Text .</p> <p>See “Adding Text”</p>
Attachment	<p>Add an attachment entity to the markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Attachment .</p> <p>See “Adding an Attachment”</p>
Hyperlink	<p>Click the workspace to attach a hyperlink.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Hyperlink .</p> <p>See “Adding a Hyperlink”</p>
Intellistamp	<p>Add a stamp on a document in a connected and disconnected environment. Includes specific document and user information (metadata) pulled directly from the DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Intellistamp .</p> <p>See “Creating an Intellistamp” “AutoVue Mobile”</p>
Measurement	<p>Create markup measure entities.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Distance , Area , Angle , Arc , or Minimum Distance .</p> <p>See “Creating 3D Markup Measure Entities”</p>
Note	<p>Add a note to the markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Note .</p> <p>See “Adding a Note”</p>
Signoff	<p>Create an approval stamp containing information about the markup author, date and time of creation.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Signoff .</p> <p>See “Adding Signoff Entities”</p>
Stamp	<p>Click and drag a stamp to the markup.</p> <p>From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Stamp .</p> <p>See “Adding a Stamp”</p>

Creating 3D Markup Measure Entities






When marking up 3D files, you can create markup measure entities. The measure options in Markup mode work slightly different than in View mode.

When measuring in Markup mode, the specified measurement lines and values are displayed on the current active markup layer as entities. These entities can be moved, resized, or deleted.

NOTE: *If you manipulate a part of a model, the measure entity values do not update accordingly.*

AutoVue provides the option to “snap” to different entity types on the model.

In Markup mode, you can choose from several measurement options to create markup measure entities. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Measurement** to access the following measure options:







Name	Description
Angle	Measure the precise angle between three vertices or any two edges, planes or faces. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Angle  .
Arc	Measure the precise radius, length and angle of any arc and calculate the center point location. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Arc  .
Distance	Measure the precise distance between any two Vertex, Edge, Midedge, Arc Center or Face. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Distance  .
Minimum Distance	Measure minimum distance between any two Vertex, Edge, Midedge, Arc Center or Face. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Minimum Distance  . You cannot create a markup measure entity when measuring minimum distance.
Vertex Coordinates	Provide the coordinates of each vertex. From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click Vertex Coordinates  .

3D Snapping Modes

Snapping modes allow you to select or snap to different entity types on a model. For example, if you select **Vertex**, all vertices are highlighted and a snap box appears when you move the cursor over a vertex.

Snapping modes allow you to snap to the following entities.

NOTE: *The behavior of snapping modes change in regards to the selected measurement option. For example, the behavior of arc center is not the same for distance and minimum distance.*

Button	Description	Behavior
Vertex 	Highlights vertices on the model.	A snap box appears when you hover the mouse pointer over a vertex.
Edge (Line) 	Highlights edges on the model.	The edge is highlighted when you hover the mouse pointer. <i>NOTE: When measuring Minimum Distance, the finite edge is selected. However, when measuring Distance, the infinite edge is selected.</i>
Edge Middle 	Highlights edges on the model.	The edge is highlighted and a tooltip appears indicating the middle edge coordinate when you hover the mouse pointer.
Arc 	Highlights arcs on the model.	The arc is highlighted when you hover the mouse pointer.
Arc Center 	Highlights arcs and circles on the model.	The arc is highlighted and a tooltip appears indicating the arc center coordinate of the arc when you hover the mouse pointer. <i>NOTE: When measuring Minimum Distance, the arc center is selected. However, when measuring Distance, the infinite arc axis is selected.</i>
Face (Plane) 	Highlights faces when you move the cursor over a face.	The face is highlighted when you hover the mouse pointer.

Measuring Distance




Use the *Distance* option to measure the distance between two vertices, edges, arc axes, faces or any combination of these entity types.


NOTE: To revert to the Point to Point distance measurement, set the SHOW_POINTOPOINT_PAGE INI option. Refer to the Installation and Administration Manual for more information.

The following table details how the distance between two entities are measured using snapping modes.

Snapping Mode Entities	Vertex	Line	Arc Center	Plane
Vertex	Distance between two points.	The shortest segment connecting the point and the line.	The shortest segment connecting the point and the arc.	The shortest segment connecting the point and the plane.
Line		Distance between two lines. <i>NOTE: The lines must be parallel.</i>	The line and axis must be parallel. Distance between the line and arc axis.	The distance between the line and the plane. <i>NOTE: The line must be parallel to the plane.</i>
Arc Center			Distance between the axes of the arcs. <i>NOTE: Arc planes must be parallel.</i>	Distance between the arc axis and the plane. <i>NOTE: The plane and the arc plane must be perpendicular.</i>
Plane				Distance between the two planes. <i>NOTE: The planes must be parallel.</i>

TASK

- From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Distance**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Distance** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.
- From the Measured Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
- Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: See "3D Snapping Modes" for more information.
STEP RESULT: All entities of the selected entity types are highlighted on the model.
- On the model, select the entity you want to measure from.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you want to take more than one measurement from the same starting point, select the **Fix Position** check box.
STEP RESULT: The location of the entity appears in the **From**  field.
- Click inside the **To**  field to select the entity type that you want to measure to.

6. Select the snapping modes that you want to select as the end point for the measurement.
STEP RESULT: All entities of the selected entity types are highlighted on the model.
7. On the model, select the entity you want to measure to.
STEP RESULT: The location of the entity appears in the **To**  field.
8. Click again to complete the measurement.
STEP RESULT: The measured line path appears in a value box entity on the current active markup. The measured distance, Delta-X, Delta-Y and Delta-Z appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.
9. Drag to move the measured line path.
10. Click on the measured line path.
11. To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.
12. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
13. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.

Calibrating Distance

Calibrate the distance measurement.

TASK


1. Measure distance between two points or measure cumulative distance.
 2. From the **Distance** tab, click **Calibrate**.
STEP RESULT: The Distance Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance
 3. From the Units list, select the unit to which you want to calibrate the distance.
 4. Select **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance to a value.
 5. Select **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate the distance by a factor.
 6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The calibration result appears in the Measurement dialog.
 7. Click **Close** to close the Distance tab.
-

Measuring an Angle

Use the **Angle** option to measure the precise angle between points on a drawing.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add entity**, select **Measurement**, and then select **Angle**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Angle** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.

2. Click the **Angle** tab.
3. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
STEP RESULT: Entities of the selected types are highlighted on the model.
4. To measure the angle between an entity type and a plane, select the **With Plane** check box, and then select the plane from the list.
5. From the Measured Angle Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
6. Click two points on the model to define the angle.
7. If you selected a Plane, click the vertex, edge or face whose angle you want to measure between the plane.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To take another measurement click **Reset**.

STEP RESULT: Angle arms appears indicating the angle. The measurement appears in the Measurement dialog.

8. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.
-

Measuring an Arc

Use the **Arc** option to measure the precise radius, length and angles of any arc on the model. It also calculates the center point location.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Arc**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Arc** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.

2. Select **Arc Entity** if you want to measure a predefined arc.
STEP RESULT: All arc and circles are highlighted on the model. Snapping modes are disabled.
3. Select **From 3 Points** if you want to measure the arc between three points. Snapping modes are displayed.

4. Select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.
STEP RESULT: All entities of the selected entity types are highlighted on the model.
5. From the Dist. Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the arc distance.
6. From the Angles Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the angle.
7. If you selected **From 3 Points**, click three points to define the arc.
STEP RESULT: The points are joined by an arc.
8. If you selected **Arc Entity**, click the edge of an arc.
STEP RESULT: The arc is highlighted.
9. Click to complete the measurement.
STEP RESULT: The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The measurements for center point coordinates, radius, diameter, arc length, start and end of angle and sweep appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.
10. To move the value box, click and drag it to anywhere on the markup.
11. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
12. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.

Calibrating an Arc

TASK


1. Measure an arc in the drawing.
2. From the **Arc** tab, click **Calibrate**.
STEP RESULT: The Radius Calibration dialog appears displaying the measured distance.
3. From the Units list, select a unit of measurement to which you want to calibrate the distance.
4. Click **Calibrate to** and enter a value if you want to calibrate to a value.
5. Click **Set Factor** and enter a value if you want to calibrate by a factor.
6. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: The calibration results appear in the Arc tab.
7. Click **Close** to close the Measurement dialog.

Measuring Minimum Distance


With the **Minimum Distance** option you can measure the minimum distance between model parts, as well as any two points from the selection sets: vertices, edges, mid-edges, arc axes, arc centers, faces or any combination of entity types.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Minimum Distance**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Minimum Distance** .

STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears.


2. Click  **Set 1**.
3. From the Snapping Mode section, select one of the following:
 - Select **Entity** if you want to measure the distance between model parts. Snapping modes are disabled.
 - Select **Geometry** if you want to measure the distance between entity types. Snapping modes are displayed.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: See “3D Snapping Modes” for more information.

4. If you selected **Entity**, select a part or parts on the model. If you selected **Geometry**, select the snapping modes that you want to use for measuring.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To reset a set, click **Clear**. To clear items from a set, select the items and press the Delete key. To deselect a part or entity type on the model, press the Control key and left-click the part or entity type.

STEP RESULT: The model parts appear in the list under **Set 1** and are highlighted on the model and in the Model Tree. All entities of the selected entity type are highlighted on the model.

5. Click  **Set 2**.
6. Repeat step 3 and 4.

STEP RESULT: The model part appears in the list under **Set 2**.

7. From the Measured Min. Distance Units list, select the unit in which you want to measure the distance.
8. Click **Compute**.

STEP RESULT: The minimum distance from the first set of entities to the second set is highlighted by a line. The measured line path, measurement and unit appear in a value box entity on the current active markup layer. The X, Y and Z coordinates for Position 1 and X, Y and Z coordinates for Position 2 appear in the Measurement Entities dialog.


9. Click and drag the value box anywhere on the markup.

10. To resize the value box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
11. Click **Close** to close the Measurement Entities dialog.

Measuring Vertex Coordinates

The **Vertex Coordinates** option provides the coordinates of vertices on the model.


TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Vertex Coordinate**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Vertex Coordinate** .
STEP RESULT: The Measurement Entities dialog appears. All vertices on the model are highlighted.
2. Scroll over the vertex whose coordinates you want to add to the markup.
STEP RESULT: The X, Y, and Z coordinates appear in a tooltip.
3. Click the vertex.
STEP RESULT: The X, Y, and Z coordinates and unit appear a value box entity on the current active markup layer and in the Measurement Entities dialog.
4. Click and drag the value box anywhere on the markup.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Click **Reset** to take another measurement.
STEP RESULT: Click and drag the frame handles to enlarge the value box.
5. To remove the highlighted vertices on the model, click **Close** in the Measurement Entities dialog.

Adding Text

With AutoVue, you can add a 3D text box entity to a markup.


TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Text**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **3D Text** .
2. The Attach To dialog appears and provides six snapping options:
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION:

Option	Description
None	Does not snap to the model.
Vertex	Snaps to a vertex on the model.
Edge	Snaps to an edge on the model.
Face	Snaps to a face on the model.
Mid Edge	Snaps to the middle of an edge on the model.
Ar Center	Snaps to the center point of an arc on the model.

- To insert a text box that snaps to a part of the drawing with a leader line, select one of the snapping modes.
 - Click and drag on the drawing to define the dimensions of the text box.
 - Click in the text box and enter the text you want to add.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The height of the text box will change to accommodate the text.
 - To change text box font properties, from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Font**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the respective font property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the font type, style, and size.
STEP RESULT: The Font dialog appears allowing you to change the font type, style, and size.
 - Click **OK** to implement the font changes and to close the Font dialog.
 - To change the line properties or fill color of the text box, select the text box, then from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select the property or properties you want to change.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the respective line property lists on the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also modify the line style, line thickness, fill types, and fill colors.
 - Right-click outside the text area to complete the modification.
STEP RESULT: The text appears on the drawing and in the Markup Navigation Tree.
 - To move the text box, click and drag it to anywhere on the drawing.
 - To resize the text box, select it and then click and drag the frame handles.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To edit the text, double-click the text box in the tree or in the workspace.
-

Adding a Note

You can attach longer comments as a markup sticky note on the drawing. A note displays in the workspace as a standard size graphical symbol . Each note is labelled as *Note<n>*—where *n* represents the numerical order of occurrence of the note (for example, the first note is labelled as *Note1*). To read the note, double-click the entity to open it or move the mouse over the entity to display the tooltip.

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Add Entity**, and then select **Note**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Note** .

STEP RESULT: The Attach To dialog appears.

2. In the Attach To dialog, click the entity type that you want to attach the note to.
3. Select the entity on the model that you want to attach a note to.

STEP RESULT: The Note applet appears.

4. Type the text that you want in the applet.

5. From the **File** menu, select **Information**.

STEP RESULT: The Note Information dialog appears.

6. To change the default font, select **Font** and the type of font.

7. Close the Note applet.

STEP RESULT: The note symbol appears on the entity and in the Markup Navigation Tree.

8. Right-click outside the note area to complete the modification.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To edit a note, double-click on the note.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Whenever an entity is attached to a 3D model, the anchor point (the point at which the entity is attached) is highlighted by a small square. The square is visible only when the anchor point is visible. This feature allows you to precisely identify the location of the anchor point and whether the associated entities are visible or hidden.



Nesting Markup Entities

You can add the Attachment or Hyperlink markup entities as a nested child to any markup entity.

TASK

1. Add a markup entity to a 3D file (for example, a Text entity).
2. From the workspace or Markup Tree, select the Text entity.

3. From the **Markup** menu, select **Attachment** or **Hyperlink**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Entity toolbar, you can also click **Attachment**  or **Hyperlink** .

RESULT:

In the Markup Tree, the selected markup entity appears as a child of the Text (parent) entity.

Working with Markup Entities

With AutoVue, you can assign a markup entity its own color, the same color as the current active layer, or a custom color. You also have the option of grouping markup entities. When you group markup entities, you can manage the group as you would a single entity.

In Markup mode, there are several options for modifying an entity. You can apply these options to selected pre-existing entities or to new entities that you add.

***NOTE:** You can edit certain markup entities after they have been created. To do so, in the Markup Navigation Tree, right-click the markup entity and then select **Edit**.*

Go To a Markup Entity

Go To restores the view state to when an entity was first created. Opening an existing Markup file also restores the last saved view state.

From the Markup Navigation Tree, right-click the markup entity that you want to view and select **Go To**.

AutoVue displays the markup page containing the entity.

If you selected a markup entity that is on another page of the Markup file, the page containing that entity will be displayed.

Selecting Markup Entities

To select a markup entity, click the markup entity's outer edge.

To select multiple entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting. The markup entity or entities are selected. You can also select the markup entities from the Markup Navigation Tree. To select multiple entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

Moving a Markup Entity

In the Markup Navigation Tree or in the workspace, select the markup entity or entities that you want to move.

To select multiple entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.

In the workspace, click and drag the selected markup entity or entities to anywhere in the workspace.

Transforming Markup Entities

NOTE: This menu option is only available for 2D and EDA files.

AutoVue provides the option to flip or rotate markup entities.

Rotating all Markup Entities

From the **Markup** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Rotate**. From the menu that appears, you have one of two options to select from:

- **Rotate Clockwise:** Rotates the markup entity 90 degrees in the clockwise direction.
- **Rotate Counter Clockwise:** Rotates the markup entity 90 degrees in the counter-clockwise direction.

NOTE: The markup entities rotate with respect to the center point of the drawing.

Rotating a selected Markup Entity

This feature is only supported for the Text and Stamp markup entities.

TASK

1. From the workspace or the Markup Navigation Tree, select the markup entity to rotate.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: It is not possible to select multiple markup entities to rotate.

2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Object**, and then select **Rotate**.
 3. Rotate the markup entity by clicking and dragging its control points. Pressing the Shift key while dragging will snap the rotation to 45 degree intervals.
-

Flipping all Markup Entities

From the **Markup** menu, select **Transform**, and then select **Flip**. From the menu that appears, you have one of two options to select from:

- **Flip Horizontal Axis:** Flips the direction of the horizontal axis of the markup entity.
- **Flip Vertical Axis:** Flips the direction of the vertical axis of the markup entity.

NOTE: The horizontal and vertical axes are aligned with the center of the drawing.

Hiding All Markup Entities

To hide all markup entities, do the following:

TASK

1. From the **Markup** menu, select **Hide Markups**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: A check mark appears next to the Hide Markups option and the markup entities are hidden on the Markup file.

2. To undo the hide option, from the **Markup** menu, deselect **Hide Markups**.
-

Hiding Markup Files

To hide selected a Markup file, do the following:

TASK

1. In the Markup Navigation Tree, right-click the Markup file, then select **Hide**.
 2. To undo the hide option, right-click the file name again and select **Show**.
-

Grouping and Ungrouping Markup Entities

When you group markup entities, you can move, delete, copy and paste, transform, or perform any modification on the group of entities that you would on a single markup entity.

NOTE: You can only group markup entities created on the same page.

Grouping Markup Entities

TASK

1. In the Markup Navigation Tree or from the workspace, select the markup entities that you want to group.
 2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Object**, and then select **Group**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click the selected markup entities and then select **Group**.
STEP RESULT: The group of entities appear in the tree under *Group*.
 3. Perform any modifications.
-

RESULT: The modifications are applied to all the entities in the group.

Ungrouping Markup Entities


TASK

1. In the Markup Navigation Tree or the workspace, select the group that you want to ungroup.
 2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Object**, and then select **UnGroup**.
-

RESULT: The group of entities appear on the markup as individual entities.

Deleting Markup Entities

TASK

1. Select the markup entity that you want to delete. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** keys while selecting.
 2. From the Markup Properties toolbar, click **Delete Markups** .
-

RESULT:

The selected entity or entities are deleted from the current active file.

NOTE: You can also press the **Delete** key to delete the markup entities. Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, and select **Delete**.

Formatting Markup Entity Properties

With AutoVue, you can modify the formatting of a markup entity via the **Format** option from the **Markup** menu, or via the Markup Entity Properties dialog.


See “Using the Markup Entity Properties Dialog”

When creating a markup entity, you have the option to change the line color, line style, line thickness, arrow style, fill color, and fill type. Additionally, you can assign the markup entity the same color as the layer.

Changing Line Color

TASK


1. Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the line color.
2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Line Color**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Line Color** . Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Line Color**.

STEP RESULT: The Line Color dialog appears.

3. From the Line Color list, select the color that you want for the entity.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Selecting **Bylayer**  changes the markup entity color to the color of the layer.

4. To define a custom line color, from the Line Color list, select **Custom Color** .
 5. From the Color dialog that appears, select a color and click **OK**.
 6. Click **OK** to close the Line Color dialog.
-

RESULT:

The line color changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

NOTE: Any new entities that you create will have the new line color.

Changing Line Style


The current line style is highlighted in the **Line Style** option.

TASK

1. Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the line style.
 2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Line Style**. Select the new line style from the options provided.
-

RESULT:

The line style changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

NOTE: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Line Style** . Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Line Style**.


NOTE: Any new entities that you create will have the new line style.

Changing Line Thickness

The current line thickness is highlighted in the **Line Thickness** option.

TASK

1. Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the line thickness.
2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Line Thickness**. Select the new line thickness from the options provided. The line thickness changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Line Thickness** . Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Line Thickness**.

3. To define a custom line thickness, from the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, select **Line Thickness**, and then select **Customize**.

STEP RESULT: The Custom Thickness dialog appears.

4. In the **Line Thickness** field, enter an integer value in pixels.
5. Click **OK** to close the Custom Thickness dialog.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Any new markup entities that you create will have the new line thickness.

Changing Arrow Style


AutoVue gives you the option to add an arrow head to certain markup entities. For example, you can change the arrow style of the line, polyline, arc, freestyle, and polygon markup entities.

TASK

1. Select the markup line entity or entities for which you want to change the arrow style.
 2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Arrow Style**. Select the new arrow style from the options provided.
-

RESULT:

The arrow style changes for the selected markup line entity or entities.


NOTE: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Arrow Style** . Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Arrow Style**.

NOTE: Any new entities that you create will have the new arrow style.

Changing Fill Type

TASK

1. Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the fill type.
2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Fill Type**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Fill Type** . Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Fill Type**.

STEP RESULT: The Fill Type dialog appears.


3. From the Fill Type list, select the fill type that you want for the markup entity:
 - Select **Solid Fill**, if you want the fill color to be solid.
 - Select **Transparent Fill**, if you want the fill color to be transparent.
 - Select **No Fill**, if you do not want any fill color.
 4. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT: The fill type changes for the selected markup entity or entities. Any new markup entities that you create will have the new fill type.

Changing Fill Color



TASK


1. Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the fill color.
2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Fill Color**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Fill Color** . Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Fill Color**.

STEP RESULT: The Fill Color dialog appears.

3. From the Fill Color list, select the color that you want for the markup entity.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Selecting **Bylayer**  changes the markup entity color to the color of the layer it is on and selecting **Line Color**  assigns the same color as the markup entity's line.

4. To define a custom line color, from the Line Color list, select **Custom Color** .
5. From the Color dialog that appears, select a color and click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The fill color changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

6. Click **OK** to close the Fill Color dialog.


ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Any new markup entities that you create will have the new fill color.


Assigning a Markup Entity the Same Color as the Layer


TASK


1. Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to assign the color of the layer that they belong to.

2. To assign the line color:
 - From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Line Color**. The Line Color dialog appears.

*NOTE: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Line Color** . Alternatively, right-click the entity in the workspace or Markup Navigation Tree, select **Format**, and then select **Line Color**.*

 - From the Line Color list, select **Bylayer** .
 3. To assign the fill color:
 - From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Fill Color**. The Fill Color dialog appears.

*NOTE: From the Markup Properties toolbar, you can also click **Fill Color** .*

 - From the Fill Color list, select **Bylayer** .
 4. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT: The selected markup entity or entities change to the color of the layer that the entity belongs to.

Changing Font

You can change the font of the text box, leader, and measurement entities.

TASK

1. Create the markup entity that you want.
2. From the workspace or the Markup Navigation Tree, select the markup entity for which you want to modify the font then do one of the following:
 - From **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Font**. The Font dialog appears. From the lists select the font, font style, and font size. You also can

- select to add a strikethrough and underline by selecting their check boxes. Click **OK** to close the dialog and implement the changes.
- From the Markup Entity toolbar, select the font, font size, and font style (bold, italic, and underline) from their respective lists and buttons. The font changes are implemented.

Changing Measurement Units and Symbols

You can change the unit of measure and add a symbol to a measurement and have it appear on the drawing.

TASK

1. Create the markup measure entity that you want.
 2. Double-click the measurement that you want to change the unit of measure or add a symbol to.
STEP RESULT: The appropriate Measure dialog appears.
 3. Deselect **Display Unit** check box if you want to hide the unit on the drawing. It is selected by default.
 4. From the Units list, select the unit that you want to change the measurement to.
 5. From the Symbol list, select the symbol that you want to add to the measurement.
 6. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT: The unit of measure changes and the selected symbol is added to the measurement and appears in the workspace.

Using the Markup Entity Properties Dialog

You can use the Markup Entity Properties dialog to modify markup entities.

TASK

1. Select the markup entity you want to modify. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
2. From the **Markup** menu, select **Format**, and then select **Markup Entity Attributes**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can also right-click a markup entity in the Markup Navigation Tree or the workspace, select **Format**, and then select **Markup Entity Attributes**.


STEP RESULT: The Markup Entity Properties dialog appears.

Line Color

Change the line color the selected markup entity or entities.

TASK

1. Select the markup entity or entities for which you want to change the line color.
2. From the Line Color list, select the color that you want for the entity.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Selecting **Bylayer**  changes the entity color to the color of the layer.

3. Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog.
-

Defining a Custom Line Color

To define a custom line color, take the following steps:

TASK

1. From the Line Color list, select **Custom Color** .

STEP RESULT: The Color dialog appears.

2. Select a color and click **OK**.
3. Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you selected markup entities prior to specifying a custom color, only the selected entities will have the new line color. To apply the new line color to any new markup entity you create, make sure no markup entity is selected before opening the Markup Entity Properties dialog.

RESULT:

The line color changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

Line Style

Change the line style for a selected markup entity or entities.

TASK

1. Select the markup entity you want to change the line style. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
2. From the Line Style list, select the required line style.

3. Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Any new markup entities that you create will have the new line style.

RESULT:

The line style changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

Line Thickness

Change the line thickness for a selected markup entity or entities.

TASK

1. Select the markup entity for which you want to change the line thickness. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
2. From the Line Thickness list, select the required line thickness.

STEP RESULT: The line thickness changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

Defining a Custom Line Thickness

To define a custom line thickness, take the following steps:

TASK

1. From the Line Thickness list, select **Customize**.
 2. In the **Width (Pixels)** field, enter the desired width.
 3. Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog.
-

RESULT:

The line thickness changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

NOTE: Any new markup entities that you create will have the new line thickness.

Width (Pixels)

Customize the line thickness when **Customize** is selected in the Line Thickness list. When other line thicknesses are selected, this field displays its value in pixels but cannot be edited.

Arrow Style

Add an arrow head at one or both ends of a markup line entity.

TASK

1. Select the markup line entity you want to change the arrow style. To select multiple markup line entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
 2. From the Arrow Style list, select the style of arrow that you want for the markup line entity.
 3. Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog.
-

RESULT:

The arrow style changes for the selected markup line entity or entities.

NOTE: Any new markup line entities that you create will have the new arrow style.

Fill Type

Change the transparency for selected markup entity or entities.

TASK

1. Select the markup entity you want to change the fill type. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
 2. From the Fill Type list, select the fill type that you want for the markup entity:
 - Select **Solid Fill**, if you want the fill color to be solid.
 - Select **Transparent Fill**, if you want the fill color to be transparent.
 - Select **No Fill**, if you do not want any fill color.
 3. Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog.
-

RESULT:

The fill type changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

NOTE: Any new markup entities that you create will have the new fill type.

Fill Color

Change the line color, fill color, and fill type for a selected markup entity or entities.

TASK

1. Select the markup entity you want to change the fill color. To select multiple markup entities, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
2. From the Fill Color list, select the color that you want for the markup entity.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Selecting **Bylayer**  changes the markup entity color to the color of the layer.

Defining a Custom Color

To define your own color, take the following steps:

TASK

1. From the Fill Color list, select **Custom Color** .

STEP RESULT: The Color dialog appears.

2. Select a color and click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The fill color changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

3. Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog.
-

RESULT:

The fill type changes for the selected markup entity or entities.

NOTE: Any new markup entities that you create will have the new fill color.

Markup Layers

You can move selected markup entities to a specific layer—the markup entities will inherit the properties of the layer.

TASK

1. From the Markup Layer list, select the layer you want to make active.
 2. Click **OK** to close the Markup Entity Properties dialog.
-

RESULT: The selected layer appears in the workspace.

See “Setting the Active Markup Layer”

Leader Alignment

With the Leader markup entity, you can adjust the location of the leader line's anchor point to the text box. The Leader Alignment list has the following option for anchor point location with respect to the text box: Top Left, Top Center, Top Right, Center Left, Center, Center Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Center, and Bottom Right.

Text Box Visibility

You can choose to hide the surrounding box for the Leader, Text, and 3D Text markup entities.

Printing

With AutoVue, you can print and preview files. Original files can be printed on their own or with associated markups and overlays. You can also choose which markup layers to make visible so that they can print.

With the **Batch Print** option, you can send a list of files to print at the same time.

When printing a file, there are print properties that you can define. From the **File** menu, select **Print** to display the following properties:

Option	Description
Print	Define the print options. See “Print Options”
Margins	Define the margin settings. See “Print Margins”
Headers/Footers	Define the headers/footers to be included on every page printed. See “Header/Footer”
Watermark	Define the watermark to be included on every page printed. See “Watermarks”
Pen Settings	Change the thickness assigned to a pen. See “Assigning Pen Settings”

Print Options

With the **Options** tab, you can define print options for the printed file. The options are:

Option	Type	Description
Printer	Modify	Select a printer and configure print properties, such as paper size, number of copies, and so on.
	Paper size	Displays selected paper size.
	Orientation	Portrait - Specify if file should be printed portrait Landscape - Specify if the file should be printed landscape Auto - Specify if orientations should be printed as saved in the file Note: Option is available with Java 2 and is only enabled for PDF and word documents.
	Units	Select a unit from the drop-down list to set the unit for Scaling and Alignment/Offset. The available units are pixels, inches and millimeters.
Scaling	Fit to Page	Scales the image to fit on the output page.
	Factor	Scales the image according to the scaling factors that you have manually entered in the input fields.
	Scale	Scales the image according to a percentage. You can select a predefined scaling factor or manually enter a custom scaling factor. Decimal places are accepted.
Alignment/Offset		Specify where the drawing will appear on the printout. Some of the available options are Top-Left, Center-Right, Bottom-Center, and so on. You can define custom alignment by entering a X and Y value.
Document Pages		Specify the document pages to print: All , Current or Range .

Option	Type	Description
Page Area		Select the page area to print.
	Extents	Print the extent of the document.
	Displayed	Print the area displayed in the View window. Option is only enabled when Current is selected for Document Pages.
	Limits	Prints the file limits instead of extents. Option is only enabled when Current is selected for Document Pages.
	Selected	Print selected area. When option is selected, the select button is enabled allowing you to select an area on the drawing. Option will only be enabled when Current is selected for Document Pages.
Force to Black		Force all colors to black.
JAVA Printing		When selected, and printing a 3D file or office document (Word, Excel, or PDF), a high-quality printout of the image is rendered using Java capabilities. On Windows OSes, you can deselect this option to use native printing capabilities. <i>NOTE: By default, this option is selected.</i>
Send Page As Images		This features is available when JAVA Printing is selected. When selected, and printing a 3D file or office document (Word, Excel, or PDF), an image is requested from the server and then sent to the printer on the client. When deselected, the page is rendered as an EMF on the server and then streamed to the printer on the client using Java capabilities. <i>NOTE: By default, this feature is deselected.</i>
Output a single page		Limits output to a single page when the scaling options selected causes a single page to span over several pages.
Print Row Headers		Print row headers. Option is only enabled for spreadsheets, archive and database files.
Print Column Headers		Print column headers. Option is only enabled for spreadsheets, archive and database files.

Option	Type	Description
Partial Preview		Display a view of the printer page, highlighting the printable area.

Configuring the Print Options

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .

STEP RESULT: The Print Properties dialog appears.

2. Click the **Options** tab.
3. Configure the print options.
4. Configure other print options.
5. To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.

STEP RESULT: The Partial Print Preview dialog appears.

6. Click **OK** to print.
-

RESULT: The Print dialog appears indicating the document is printing.

Print Margins

From the **Margins** tab of the Print Properties dialog, you can define the top, bottom, right and left margins for the printed file. You can define:

Option	Description
Margins	Set the value for the Left , Top , Right , and Bottom margins.
Minimum	Set the acceptable minimum margins for the selected printer.
Units	Specify the unit for the margins.

Setting the Margins

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .

STEP RESULT: The Print Properties dialog appears.

2. Click the **Margins** tab.
3. Enter the margin size that you want for **Left**, **Top**, **Right**, and **Bottom** or click **Minimum** if you want to set the margins to the minimum acceptable for the selected printer.
4. From the **Units** list, select the unit to which you want to set the margins.
5. Configure other print options.
6. To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.

STEP RESULT: The Partial Print Preview dialog appears.

7. Click **OK** to print.
-

RESULT: The Print dialog appears indicating the document is printing.

Header/Footer

From the **Headers/Footers** tab of the Print Properties dialog, you can define the headers and footers that you want to print on every page of the document. You can enter the text manually or choose from a list of **Insert Codes**.

The list of insert codes are:

- %f: Full path of document
- %v: Document Drive
- %d: Document Directory
- %b: Document Base name
- %e: Document file extension
- %n: Total document pages
- %p: Current page number

- %N: Total tiled-pages
- %P: Current tile number
- %Y: Date: Year
- %M: Date: Month
- %D: Date: Day
- %W: Date: Day of week
- %H: Time: Hour
- %U: Time: Minute
- %S: Time: Seconds
- %r: New line
- %F: Native Print Settings (Excel)

NOTE: A literal percentage mark is entered manually as %%.

You can also print system variables in headers and footers. Select a variable from the Insert Variable list. Some **Insert Variable** options are: user.name, browser and java.home.

Adding a Header and Footer

In the **Headers/Footers** tab, you can manually enter text or choose from a list of **Insert Codes** to appear in the headers and footers. You can also print system variables.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .

STEP RESULT: The Print Properties dialog appears.

2. Click the **Headers/Footers** tab.
3. Click in the **Left**, **Center**, or **Right** field to specify where you want the text to appear in the header and footer, then enter the text.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can have text appear in the **Left**, **Center**, and **Right** of a header and footer.

4. To **Insert Code** in the header or footer, click **Left**, **Center**, or **Right**, then select a code from the list.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: For example, if you select **%n: Total document pages** the total number of pages for the selected file will appear in the header and footer.

5. To change the Font, click **Set Font**.

STEP RESULT: The Font dialog appears.


6. Configure the font, then click **OK**.
7. In the Print Properties dialog, configure other print properties.
8. To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.
STEP RESULT: The Partial Print Preview dialog appears.
9. Click **OK** to print.

RESULT: The Print dialog appears indicating the document is printing.

Adding a Header and Footer

In the Headers/Footers tab, you can manually enter text or choose from a list of Insert Codes to appear in the headers and footers. You can also print system variables.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .
STEP RESULT: The Print Properties dialog appears.
2. Click the **Headers/Footers** tab.
3. Click in the **Left**, **Center** or **Right** field and enter the text that you want to appear in the header and footer, or choose an **Insert Code** or **Insert Variable**.
4. To **Insert Code** in the header or footer, click **Left**, **Center** or **Right**, then select a code from the list.
5. To **Insert Variable** in the header or footer, click **Left**, **Center** or **Right**, then select a variable from the list.
6. To change the Font, click **Set Font**. The Font dialog appears.
7. From the Font list, select the type of font.
8. From the Size list, select the size of font.
9. To set the font **Style**, click **Bold** or **Italic** or both, then click **OK**.
10. In the Print Properties dialog, configure other print properties.
11. To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.
STEP RESULT: The Partial Preview dialog appears.
12. Click **OK** to print.

RESULT: The Print dialog appears indicating the document is printing.

Native Print Settings

You can choose to include predefined headers and footers when printing an Excel file from AutoVue.

TASK

1. From the Print Properties dialog, click the **Headers/Footers** tab.
 2. Under **Headers** and **Footers**, click inside the **Left**, **Center**, and **Right** boxes corresponding to the header or footer position in the original file.
 3. Select **%F: Native Print Settings (Excel)** from the **Insert Code** list.
 4. Click **OK** to print.
-

RESULT: The Excel file's headers and footers are printed.

Watermarks

From the **Watermark** tab of the Print Properties dialog, you can specify a watermark that will appear on a printed file. When printing a watermark, it appears transparent on the file contents. You can choose a horizontally or vertically oriented watermark.

In addition to entering text, you can:

- set the type, size and style of font
- insert Watermark information
- print system variables

To insert Watermark information, AutoVue provides a list of codes that you can choose from. These codes are:

- %f: Full path of document
- %v: Document Drive
- %d: Document Directory
- %b: Document Base name
- %e: Document file extension
- %n: Total document pages
- %p: Current page number

- %N: Total tiled-pages
- %P: Current tile number
- %Y: Date: Year
- %M: Date: Month
- %D: Date: Day
- %W: Date: Day of week
- %H: Time: Hour
- %U: Time: Minute
- %S: Time: seconds
- %r: New line


NOTE: A literal percentage mark is entered manually as %%.

You can also print system variables in watermarks. Select a variable from the **Insert Variable** list. Some **Insert Variable** options are: user.name, browser and java.home.

Adding a Watermark

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .

STEP RESULT: The Print Properties dialog appears.

2. Click the **Watermark** tab.
3. Enter the **Watermark Text** that you want to appear on the file.
4. To insert a code in the watermark, select a code from the Insert Code list.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: For example, if you select **%n: Total document pages**, the total number of pages for the selected file will appear in the Watermark. You can insert more than one code.

5. To insert a system variable, select a variable from the Insert Variable list.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: For example, if you select **browser.version**, the version of the browser that the file is displayed in will appear in the Watermark.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can insert more than one system variable.

6. To set the orientation of the watermark, click **Diagonal, Horizontal or Vertical**.
7. To change the Font, click **Set Font**. The Font dialog appears.
 - a From the Font list, select the type of font.
 - b From the Size list, select the size of font.

8. In the Print Properties dialog, configure other print properties.
 9. To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.
STEP RESULT: The Partial Preview dialog appears.
 10. Click **OK** to print.
-


RESULT: The Print dialog appears indicating the document is printing.

Assigning Pen Settings

From the **Pen Settings** tab of the Print Properties dialog, you can set the thickness of the color indices for the print file.

NOTE: AutoVue uses the default pen color indices of the native document for the vector file being viewed. You will not be able to change the color assigned to a pen with AutoVue.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .
STEP RESULT: The Print Properties dialog appears.
 2. Click the **Pen Settings** tab.
 3. Under **From/To**, select the **Color Index** that you want to assign a new pen thickness.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To change more than one color indices, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.
 4. From the **Units** list, select the unit of measure that you want to set the thickness.
 5. Enter the new thickness.
STEP RESULT: The new **Thickness** appears beside the **Color Index**.
 6. In the Print Properties dialog, configure other print properties
 7. Configure other print options.
 8. To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.
STEP RESULT: The Partial Print Preview dialog appears.
 9. Click **OK** to print.
STEP RESULT: The Print dialog appears indicating the document is printing.
-

Creating a New Pen Setting

TASK

1. Set the thickness for the color indices that you want.
2. Click **Save As**. The Save As dialog appears.
3. Enter a file name with a **.c2t** extension, then click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The new pen setting appears in the **Current Pen Settings** list.

4. In the Print Properties dialog, click **OK** to print.
-

RESULT: The Print dialog appears indicating the document is printing.

Deleting a Pen Setting

TASK

1. Select the pen setting that you want to delete from the **Current Pen Settings**.
2. Click **Delete**.

STEP RESULT: The pen setting disappears from the list.

3. Click **Cancel** to close the Print Properties dialog.
-

Partial Preview of a File

The Partial Print Preview dialog displays the printable area on top of the page area so that users can have a clear idea of what will be printed.

NOTE: Option is only enabled when **Current** is selected from **Document Pages**.

TASK

1. Configure the print properties.
2. Click **Partial Preview** in the Print Properties dialog.

STEP RESULT: The Partial Print Preview dialog appears and highlights the area that will be printed. The **Paper size**, **Printable Area**, and **Drawing Area** are displayed.


3. Click **OK** to close the Partial Print Preview dialog.
-

Previewing a File Before Printing

You can preview a print copy of the current active file on screen according to your printer's capabilities and the print property settings.

TASK

1. View the file in AutoVue.
2. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .

STEP RESULT: The Print Properties dialog appears.

3. Configure the print properties.
4. Click **OK**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can print the file from the Print Preview window by clicking **Print**. You can also zoom in and out of a file, as well as navigate from one page to another of a multi-page file.

STEP RESULT: The file appears in Print Preview Mode in the Print Preview window.

5. Click **Close** to close the Print Preview window.
-

Printing a File

You can print original files along with their Markup files and selected markup layers together so that they appear as one file.


TASK

1. Open the file you want to print.
2. To print the associated markups, open the Markup file or files you want to print.
3. If you are printing Markup files and you want to print the visible layers, from the **Markup** menu, select **Markup Layers**.

STEP RESULT: The Markup Layers dialog appears.

4. Select the markup layers you want visible.
5. Click **OK** to close the Markup Layers dialog.

6. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Print** .

STEP RESULT: The Print Properties dialog appears.

7. Configure the print properties.
8. To view a partial view of the file, click **Partial Preview**.

STEP RESULT: The Partial Print Preview dialog appears.

9. Click **OK** to print.

RESULT: The Print dialog appears indicating the document is printing.

Batch Printing

With the **Batch Print** option you can send a list of files to print at the same time. You can also generate a batch by simultaneously opening all the files included in the batch print.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Batch Print**.

STEP RESULT: The Batch Print dialog appears.

2. To add a file to be printed, click **Add**.

STEP RESULT: The Open dialog appears.

3. Enter the file name or browse to locate the file or files that you want to add, then click **Open**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To add more files to the list, repeat steps 2 to 4. To remove a file(s), select the file from the **List of files to be printed** and click **Remove**.

STEP RESULT: The files appear in the **List of files to be printed**.

4. Click **OK** in the Batch Print dialog.

STEP RESULT: The Print Properties dialog appears.

5. Configure the print properties.
6. Click **OK** to print.

RESULT: The Print dialog appears indicating the document is printing.

Conversion

Sometimes you need to convert a file to be able to use it with an application it was not created from. AutoVue provides several conversion file formats for you.

Conversion Options

From the **File** menu, select **Convert** to open the Convert dialog. Note that depending on the conversion type being performed, the dialog options will vary. Depending on the conversion type being performed, the available options in the **Convert** dialog will vary. These options are:

Option	Description
Color Depth	Select an option from the list: 1 = Black and white 4 = 16 colors 8 = 256 colors 24 = True color auto = AutoVue selects the color depth that best matches the original file.
Convert to Format	A list of all the possible types of output file formats currently available for conversion. The available formats are: Stereolithography Virtual Reality Modelling Language CALS GP4 Encapsulated Postscript (Raster) HP Laserjet Printer (PCL) PCX Bitmap Run Length RLC File PDF TIFF Windows Bitmap

Option	Description
Output	Specify the name and path of the file in which the conversion is to be stored. This file is also known as the output file. You can use Browse to provide AutoVue with the file's path. If writing onto an existing file, a warning message appears, asking if you want to overwrite the existing file.
Sub-Format	The Sub-Format list appears when you selected HP Laserjet Print or TIFF from the Convert to Format list. Select a sub-format from the list. The Sub-Format list appears when you selected HP Laserjet Print , TIFF , or Compuserve GIF from the Convert to Format list. Specify the variety of convert-to-format by selecting a sub-format.
Convert Region	The area of the file to be converted. The available options are: Display - the area displayed in the workspace. For example, if you zoomed in on a particular region of the file, the zoomed portion of the file is converted. Extent - refers to the entire extents of the file.
Convert Pages	The number of pages to be converted. The available options are: All - convert all pages Current - convert the current page Range - convert the pages indicated in the range
X and Y	Choose from pixels, inches and millimeters for the units. With raster files the units are preset as pixels: X indicates the number of horizontal pixels Y is the number of vertical pixels for the current active file contents. At times, AutoVue will preset X and Y to match the specifications of the selected conversion file format. Other times, X and Y will be available and may be changed according to your preferences. Your selection here will not affect the current display but will affect the conversion file's resolution.

Converting a 3D Model

TASK

- From the **File** menu, select **Convert**.
STEP RESULT: The Convert dialog appears.
- In the **Save As** field, enter the path and filename or click **Browse** to locate the directory where you want to convert the file to, then enter a file name.

3. From the Convert to Format list, select the format you want to convert the file to.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The Output and Convert area options change according to the type of format you choose.

4. Select the output and convert options that you want to set for the file.
5. Click **OK**.

RESULT:

The Conversion in Progress dialog appears. The dialog disappears when the file is converted successfully.

PDF

With AutoVue it is possible to convert Office, 2D and EDA formats to PDF. When converted from Markup Mode, markups are added to the contents of the base PDF file. When you open the PDF, you will see the base file along with all markups.

X and Y

Three factors affect the resolution of an image: the type of image you are scanning, the output device and the acceptable file size. High-resolution scans often require large files, causing longer processing and print time. Note that a high-resolution may not produce a better-quality printed image if your output device does not recognize the higher resolution information stored in the file. To keep file sizes manageable, select the lowest resolution that provides acceptable quality on your output device.

With some file types, the **Size** option appears giving you a choice between millimeters and inches. Page sizes can be selected from the **Size** list or you can customize page sizes by configuring the Initialization file. For more information, refer to the System Administration Guide.

Technical Drawing Page Sizes	ISO Paper Format
A8.5" X 11.0" (216 mm X 279 mm)	A4 285 mm X 198 mm

Technical Drawing Page Sizes	ISO Paper Format
B11.0" X 17.0" (279 mm X 432 mm)	A3 396 mm X 273 mm
C17.0" X 22.0" (432 mm X 559 mm)	A2 570 mm X 396 mm
D22.0" X 34.0" (559 mm X 864 mm)	A1 817 mm X 570 mm
E34.0" X 44.0" (864 mm X 1118 mm)	A0 1165 mm X 817 mm

Converting a File

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Convert**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The **Input** area varies according to the type of file. A word-processing file displays the file format; a raster file displays the file format and size; vector and database files display the size, file type and dimensions.

STEP RESULT: The Convert dialog appears.

2. In the **Save As** field, enter the path and filename or click **Browse** to locate the directory where you want to save the converted file.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If writing on to an existing file, the contents of the output file will be overwritten.

3. Specify the conversion options.

4. Click **OK**. The file is converted and appears in the specified directory.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can convert several selected pages of a multi-page file to a multi-page TIFF.

Changing the Pen Settings

With AutoVue, you can specify a thickness for each pen color when doing a conversion. This option only applies to vector files.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Convert**.
STEP RESULT: The Convert dialog appears.
 2. Click **Pens**.
STEP RESULT: The pen Thickness dialog appears.
 3. In the **From/To** section of the Pen Thickness dialog, select the **Color Index** for which you want to modify the thickness.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one Color Index, press the Shift or Control keys while selecting.
 4. From the **Units** list, select the unit in which you want to set the thickness.
 5. In the **Thickness** field, enter a thickness value.
 6. Press the **Enter** key.
STEP RESULT: The new thickness value appears beside the selected Color Index in the From/To section of the Pen Thickness dialog.
 7. To save the changes that you made, click **Save As**.
STEP RESULT: The Save As dialog appears.
 8. Enter a file name for the new pen settings.
 9. Click **OK**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To modify an existing pen setting, select the pen setting from the Current Pen Settings list, make the changes, then click Save.
STEP RESULT: The new pen settings are saved and appear in the Current Pen Settings list.
 10. Click **OK** to close the Pen Thickness dialog.
-

AutoVue Mobile

AutoVue Mobile provides the ability to view and add markups to files in a disconnected environment. Whether you are travelling or need to share files with an external partner, you can still view files, markups, and add new markups. Additionally, when connected, you can update your backend DMS/PLM/ERP/UCM system with edits you make offline.

Using the AutoVue Mobile feature in AutoVue, you can create a Mobile Pack (a "packaged" file that contains the base file, all the external resources—fonts, XRefs—needed to fully display the file, and existing markups for the file). The streaming files and renditions can also be included when creating the Mobile Pack.

Once a Mobile Pack is created, you can view your drawing and markups by viewing the Mobile Pack. You can create new markups, consolidate them with existing markups into one markup, or create a master Markup file that loads up automatically when you view the Mobile Pack.

In a disconnected environment, depending on the markup policy defined during Mobile Pack creation, you can add markups using AutoVue Desktop Version or the Desktop deployment of AutoVue. Markup policies define whether or not users can create/save new or existing markups, modify/delete (DMS only) existing markups, or automatically upload markups.

When you have access to your backend system, from AutoVue, you can update all the markups into the backend system. These markups are imported into the system and are associated with the base file from which you originally created the Mobile Pack.

The following sections provide details on creating a Mobile Pack, creating markups in AutoVue Mobile, understanding markup policies, and updating Markup files from Mobile Pack.

Creating a Mobile Pack

The *Mobile Pack* includes the native file or streaming file, metadata, Intellistamp designs, all reference files (XRefs), and associated markups. Optionally, you can include renditions such as TIFF or PDF.

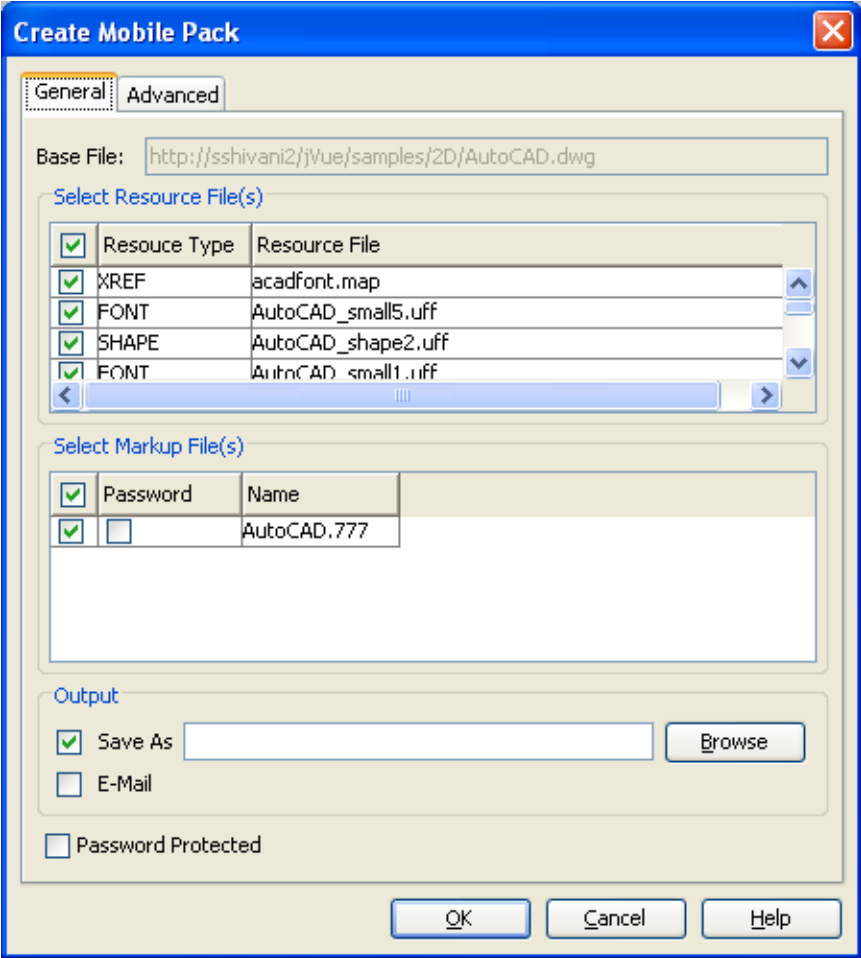
The following steps explain how to create a Mobile Pack for a file with attached Markup files:

TASK

1. Open the base file.
2. From the AutoVue menu bar, select **Collaborate**, and then select **Create Mobile Pack**.

STEP RESULT: The Create Mobile Pack dialog appears. It displays the General and Advanced tabs, which contain the basic and advanced options for creating a Mobile Pack, respectively.

3. Click the **General** tab.



ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The following table lists the options available in the General tab:

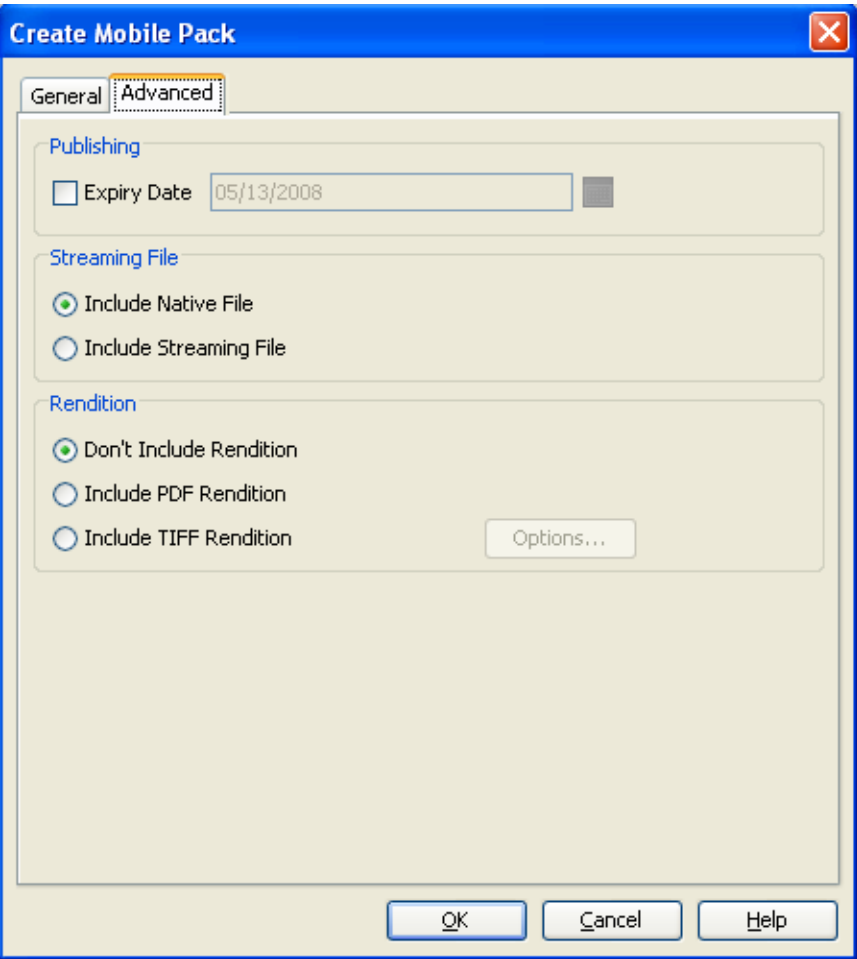
Option	Description
Base File	Displays the file path of the base file.

Option	Description
Select Resource File(s)	Lists all the fonts, XRefs, and other external resources that are used to fully display the base file. As a default, all resource files are selected.
Select Markup File(s)	Lists all Markup files associated with the base file. You can password protect single or multiple Markup files.
Output	You can select the output location for the Mobile Pack, and also send the file using your default e-mail client.
Password Protected	You can password protect the Mobile Pack.

4. From the **Select Resource File(s)** box, select the resource files to include in the Mobile Pack.
5. From the **Select Markup File(s)** box, select the Markup files to include in the Mobile Pack.
6. If you wish to password protect the Markup files, select the **Password** check box next to the Markup file.
 - a In the **Password** field, enter a password of any length and character.
 - b In the **Confirm Password** field, re-enter the password.
 - c Click **OK** to close the Password dialog.
7. To save the Mobile Pack locally, from the Output options, specify the location and name:
 - a Click **Browse** to locate the directory where you want to save, or in the **Save As** field, enter the file path.
 - b Specify a name for the Mobile Pack.
8. If you wish to send the Mobile Pack using your default e-mail client, select the **E-Mail** check box.
9. If you wish to password protect the Mobile Pack, select the **Password Protected** check box.
 - a In the **Password** field, enter a password of any length and character.
 - b In the **Confirm Password** field, re-enter the password.
 - c Click **OK** to close the Password dialog.
10. To select Advanced options such as including streaming file and setting an expiry date on the Mobile Pack, continue to the next step.
11. If you do not wish to modify advanced options, click **Finish** to complete Mobile Pack creation.

12. Click the **Advanced** tab.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: Depending on the Company Wide Policy settings, the Advanced tab options might be disabled. For more information on Company Wide Policy, refer to the *Installation and Administration Manual*.



ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The following table lists the options available in the Advanced tab:

Option	Description
Publishing	Lets you specify an expiry date for the Mobile Pack. After the expiry date, the content of the Mobile Pack will not be accessible.
Streaming File	Lets you choose to include the native file or the streaming file in the Mobile Pack. There are certain limitations when loading streaming files: Streaming files do not support blocks and views options. Streaming file requirements change with each release of AutoVue. As a result, a streaming file from a previous version of AutoVue cannot be loaded in the latest release. For 3D files, including the streaming file reduces the file size of the Mobile Pack. Also, since native files are not released, including the streaming file increases security. See Also “Streaming Files”

Option	Description
Rendition	Lets you choose to include a PDF or TIFF rendition in the Mobile Pack.

13. If you wish to set an expiry date for the Mobile Pack, from the Publishing option, select the **Expiry Date** check box and then select a date. The Mobile Pack cannot be opened after this expiry date.
14. If you wish to include a streaming file, from the **Streaming File** option, select whether to include a native file or streaming file in the Mobile Pack.
15. If you wish, from the **Rendition** option, you can include a PDF or TIFF rendition in the Mobile Pack.
16. Click **OK** to complete Mobile Pack creation.

RESULT: If you selected the **E-Mail** check box, your default e-mail client opens with the Mobile Pack (*.avp) as an attachment. Otherwise, the Mobile Pack is output to the specified location.




Viewing Mobile Packs

Mobile Packs are opened in the same way as ordinary files. Users have access to all the external reference files (XRefs), resource files, and markups bundled with the base file. Additionally, users have the option to modify existing markups or create new ones to be associated with the Mobile Pack.

You can open a Mobile Pack as you would open any other file in AutoVue:

TASK

1. From the AutoVue menu bar, select **File**, and then select **Open**.
STEP RESULT: The Open dialog appears.
2. Browse to the location of the Mobile Pack (*.avp), and then select **Open**.

3. If the Mobile Pack is password-protected during creation, the Password dialog appears. In the **Password** field, enter the password and then click **OK**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The native file or streaming file opens in AutoVue with all associated XRefs, resource files, markups, and renditions.
There are certain limitations when loading a streaming file:
 - Streaming files do not support blocks or viewing options.
 - Streaming file constraints change with each version of AutoVue. As a result, the streaming file from an earlier version of AutoVue cannot be opened in a later version.
 - Streaming files are platform-specific. Therefore, a streaming file created on a Windows platform cannot work on a UNIX platform, and vice versa.
 4. If the Rendition option is selected during the creation of the Mobile Pack, from the AutoVue menu bar, select **Collaborate**, and then select **View Rendition from Mobile Pack**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: It is not possible to add markups to a rendition.
STEP RESULT: The rendition appears in a new AutoVue window.
 5. If there are associated Markup files, the **Markup Indicator** icon  appears in the status bar. To open the Markup files, click the **Markup Indicator** icon .
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the menu bar, you can also click **Open Markup(s)** .
STEP RESULT: The Choose a New or an Existing Markup dialog appears.
 6. If you wish to create a new Markup file to include in the Mobile Pack, click **Create a new Markup file**.
 7. If you wish to open Markup files included in the Mobile Pack, click **Choose an existing Markup file**, and then select the Markup files.
 8. If the Markup file is password-protected during creation, The Password dialog appears. In the **Password** field, enter the password and then click **OK**.
 9. If you wish to import a Markup file from your local machine, click **Import**.
STEP RESULT: The File Open dialog appears.
 10. Select the Markup file and click **Open**.
-


Creating Markup Files

When marking up a Mobile Pack, you can create new markups or consolidate existing markups to a new markup. You cannot modify markups that are bundled during Mobile Pack creation.

When working with a Mobile Pack in the Desktop deployment of AutoVue, you may be restricted from saving new markups, editing markups, deleting markups, opening markups, and filtering as a result of the markup policy. The markup policy, which is defined in Client/Server deployment of AutoVue, includes a set of rules to determine certain restrictions and privileges for users of the Mobile Pack.

To save a new Markup file with a Mobile Pack, do the following:

TASK

1. Create markups.
 2. From the AutoVue toolbar, click **Save Markup** .
STEP RESULT: The Save Markup dialog appears.
 3. Enter a name for the Markup file in the **Name** field.
 4. If you wish to password protect the Markup file, select the **Password Protected** check box.
 5. If you wish to save the Markup file to a location on a local computer, click **Export**.
 6. Click **OK**.
 7. If you wish to send the updated Mobile Pack with your default e-mail client, from the AutoVue menu bar, select **Collaborate**, and then select **Reply to Mobile Pack**.
-

RESULT: Your default e-mail client opens with the Mobile Pack (*.avp) as an attachment.

Defining Markup Policy

Markup policy defines a set of rules to determine certain restrictions and privileges for users of the Mobile Pack. If no markup policy is defined in the Mobile Pack, a default set of values are used.

The default markup policy file, *MarkupPolicy.xml*, can be found in the <AutoVue installation>\bin folder.

The following table explains the actions included in the markup policy, their default values, and which values can be modified.

All the following actions can be combined with certain exceptions.

Action	Description	Default
SaveNewMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	If TRUE , new Markup file creation inside the Mobile Pack is allowed. If FALSE , new Markup file creation inside the Mobile Pack is not allowed: For new/imported (local file) Markup file, <i>Markup Save</i> and <i>Markup Save As</i> are disabled. For an existing Markup file, <i>Markup Save As</i> is disabled.	TRUE
SaveExistingMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	If TRUE , resave of existing Markup file is allowed. If FALSE , the Markup file from the Mobile Pack cannot be re-saved. The <i>Markup Save</i> command will be disabled for the existing Markup file.	TRUE
EditMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	If TRUE , the Markup file can be edited. If FALSE , the Markup file is opened as read-only. All manipulation commands at all levels—Markup file, markup layers, and markup entities—are disabled. Setting EditMarkup=False is equivalent to the Hide Icon menu option.	TRUE
DeleteMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	<i>NOTE: Only available for a Mobile Pack created with DMS files.</i> If TRUE , the Delete Markup menu option is enabled in the Markup File Open dialog. If FALSE , the Delete Markup menu option is disabled in the Markup File Open dialog.	TRUE
OpenMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	If TRUE , the Markup file is listed in the Markup File Open dialog. If FALSE , the Markup files is not listed in the Markup File Open dialog.	TRUE
AutoOpenMarkup= <TRUE FALSE>	If TRUE , the Markup file opens automatically when opening the Mobile Pack. If FALSE , the Markup file does not open automatically when opening the Mobile Pack.	FALSE

Action	Description	Default
FilterAttrFromGUI.<GUI>.<Prop>.<Value>=<TRUE FALSE>	<p>If TRUE, the given property value is removed from the GUI definition.</p> <p>If FALSE, the given property value is <i>not</i> removed from the GUI definition.</p> <p>This action takes three parameters:</p> <p>GUI: GUI definition to be modified</p> <p>Prop: Property to be removed</p> <p>Value: Property value to be removed</p> <p>If no Value is specified, then the UI element that represents the given property in the GUI definition is removed.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre><Action name="FilterAttrFromGUI.Edit.CSI_MarkupType.master" default="false"></pre>	FALSE

The following is an example of how to define a markup policy in XML. The actions are highlighted.

```
<MarkupPolicy>
<Action name="SaveExistingMarkup" default="true">
  <ExConditions>
    <OrOperator>
      <AndOperator>
        <AnyMarkupFileCondition Name="CSI_MarkupType" Value="master"/>
        <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_MarkupType" value="consolidated"/>
        <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_DocAuthor" value="$CURRENT_USER"/>
      </AndOperator>
      <NotOperator>
        <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_DocAuthor" value="$CURRENT_USER"/>
      </NotOperator>
    </OrOperator>
  </ExConditions>
</Action>
<Action name="EditMarkup" default="true">
  <ExConditions>
    MarkupFileCondition name="Original" value="true"/>
  </ExConditions>
</Action>
<Action name="DeleteMarkup" default="true">
  <ExConditions>
    <OrOperator>
      <AndOperator>
        <AnyMarkupFileCondition name="CSI_MarkupType" value="master"/>
        <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_MarkupType" value="consolidated"/>
        <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_DocAuthor" value="$CURRENT_USER"/>
      </AndOperator>
      <NotOperator>
        <MarkupFileCondition name="CSI_DocAuthor" value="$CURRENT_USER"/>
      </NotOperator>
    </OrOperator>
  </ExConditions>
</Action>
<Action name="FilterAttrFromGUI.Edit.CSI_MarkupType.master" default="false">
  <ExConditions>
    <AnyMarkupFileCondition name="CSI_MarkupType" value="master"/>
  </ExConditions>
</Action> </MarkupPolicy>
```

Updating from Mobile Pack

When you are finished working with the Mobile Pack, you can update your changes to the backend DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM system. You can synchronize all of the markups created in

the Mobile Pack to your backend system. These markups will be associated with the file in the backend system from which you originally created the Mobile Pack.

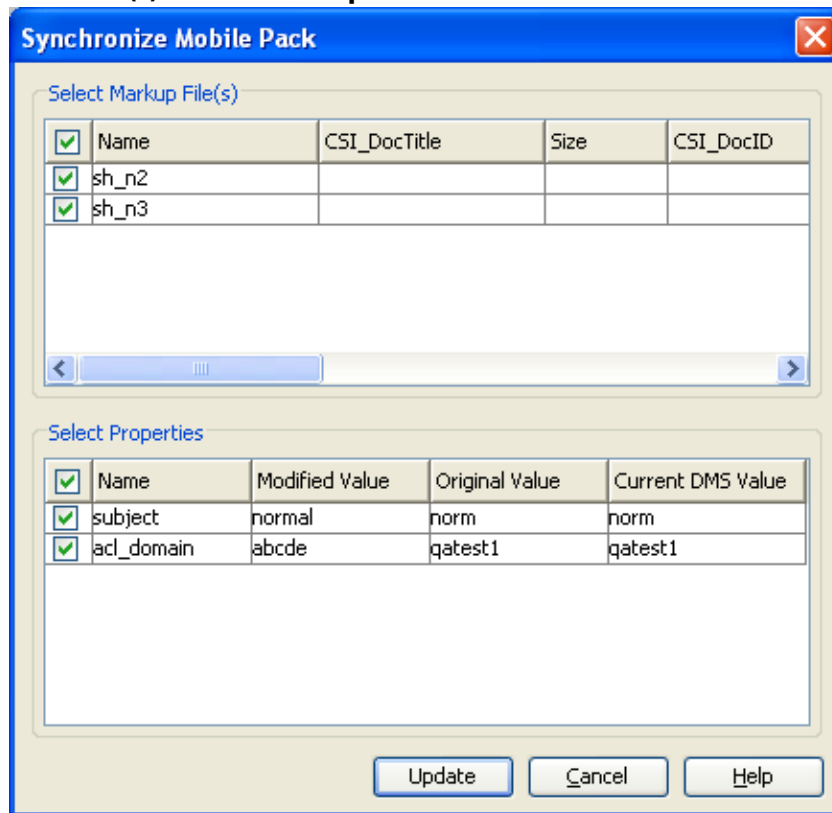
To initiate the updating process, open the Mobile Pack and then do the following:

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Update from Mobile Pack**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you are not connected to the backend system, you are prompted for your username and password.

STEP RESULT: The Update from Mobile Pack dialog appears. It includes the **Select Markup File(s)** and **Select Properties** lists.



2. The **Select Markup File(s)** list displays the markups that can be imported back to the backend system. To select a Markup file to import, select the corresponding check box.
3. The **Select Properties** list displays new properties if a new Intellistamp is added.

STEP RESULT: The modified value, original value, and current DMS value appear in their respective columns. The modified value contains the new Intellistamp properties for the Mobile Pack. The original value contains the Intellistamp properties in the backend system when the Mobile Pack was created. The current DMS value lists current values in the backend system.

4. To select a property to update, from the Select Properties list, select the corresponding check box.
 5. Click **Update**.
-

RESULT: The Markup files and attributes in the backend system updates from your local Mobile Pack.

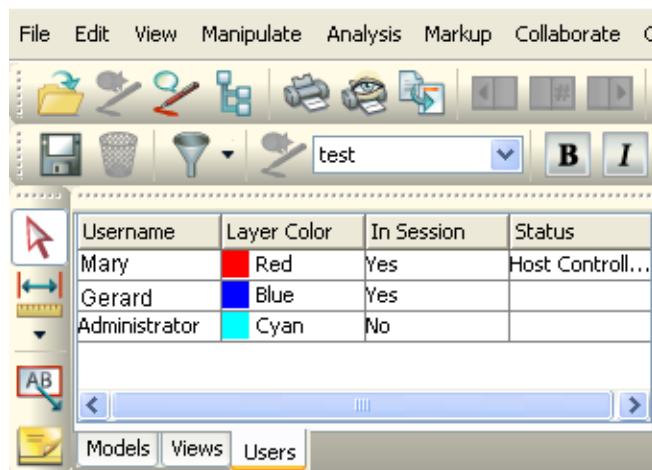
Real-Time Collaboration

The real-time collaboration option enables multiple users to review files interactively and simultaneously, thereby shortening the review process for documents.

Participants in a Collaboration Session assume different roles. Each Collaboration Session has a Host, a Controller and one or more users. These participants have varying privileges during the Collaboration Session.

Collaboration User Tree

When you are in a Collaboration Session, the panel on the left displays the **Users** tab, in addition to the tabs displayed when you are normally viewing a file. The **Users** tab displays the **Username**, the **Layer Color** representing the user, the **In Session** value and the user **Status**.



The Host

The person who initiates the Collaboration Session is the Host by default. The Host is also automatically the Controller of the Collaboration Session. The Host can assign another user to be the Host by selecting **Assign Host** from the **Collaborate** menu.

When initiating a Collaboration Session, the Host can specify the Markup to open; the host can also open a Markup file while a session is in progress. The Host can invite other users to join the Collaboration Session during the session or at initiation of the session.

The Host can also save the collaboration markup, called the Session Markup. The host is the only one who can save the Session Markup.


The Controller

The **Controller** is the person who controls the base file's view during the Collaboration Session. Other participants in the Collaboration Session can choose between displaying or hiding the Controller's View changes.

When a session is initiated, the Host is also the Controller. The Controller can change the base file anytime during the Collaboration Session. However, when the Controller is not the Host, opening a new file has to be approved by the Host.


At any time during a session, a participant who is not an Observer can request control of a Collaboration Session.

Lock

Any user who is not the Controller of the Collaboration Session can choose to display the Controller's View modifications on the base file and the other participants' modifications on the Markup file made during the Collaboration Session. To do so, from the **Collaborate** menu, select **Lock View to Presenter**, or from the Collaborate status bar, click **Lock View to Presenter** .

When you lock your view, the file displayed will have the same Configuration options that the Controller set in the **Configure** menu.

NOTE: For all users, except for the Controller, view options are disabled.

To unlock your view from the presenter's, from the **Collaborate** menu, again select **Lock View to Presenter**, or from the Collaborate status bar, click **Unlock View to Presenter** .

Observer

Observers can take part in a Collaboration Session but cannot create Markup entities. They can observe and make comments in the Chat window. The Host can designate a user as an Observer when the Host invites the user to the Collaboration session. A user can also decide to take part as an Observer in the Collaboration Session by selecting **Observer** in the Join Session dialog. There can be more than one Observer during a Collaboration Session.

Opening a File

The Controller is the only user who can open a file during a Collaboration Session.

To open a URL, from the **File** menu, select **Open URL**.

To open a local file, from the **File** menu, select **Open Local File**.

The **File Open** dialog appears, letting you specify the file to open.

When AutoVue is integrated with a Document Management System (DMS), clicking **Open URL** opens a dialog that lets you view a DMS file. You can work on this file opened through **Open URL** during the Collaboration Session. When the Host is the same as the Controller and the Host opens a URL, the host is prompted to save the Session Markup. When the Controller opens a URL, the Host is prompted to save the Session Markup.

Pointer

The **Pointer**  is the cross-hair marker the Controller uses to point to a specific place in the file.

Session Information

The **Session Information** option is available from the **Collaborate** menu during a Collaboration Session. It displays the **Session Subject** (the name assigned to the Collaboration Session), the **Session ID**, the name of the base file viewed, the **Host** and the list of users participating.

Session Markup

This is the Markup file created during the Collaboration Session. All participants can add Markup entities to the Session Markup file.

*NOTE: Only the Host can save the Session Markup. **Save** and **Save As** are disabled for all other users.*

Show Tracker

The **Show Presenter Window** option in the **Collaborate** menu is available to any user whose view is set to unlocked. When you select **Show Tracker** from the **Collaborate** menu, the **Presenter Window** appears displaying a bird's eye view of the base file viewed and the Markup changes done during the Collaboration Session.

When you use **Show Presenter Window**, you can simultaneously track the Controller's base file view changes and everyone's markup changes in the **Presenter Window** while your main window display remains unaffected by anyone's modifications. It is like having a locked view and an unlocked view on hand at the same time.

Collaboration Session

The **Collaborate** menu provides you with a means to initiate a Collaboration Session or join an existing session. When you initiate a Collaboration Session, a session object is created on the server and you are the Host and Controller of the session. The Host owns the

Session Markup and is the only one who can save it and open an existing Markup. The Host can also invite other users during a session.

Initiating a Collaboration Session

When you initiate a Collaboration Session, a session object is created on the server and is maintained for the duration of the Collaboration Session. When you initiate a session, you become the Host and the Controller of the session.

TASK

1. Open the file that you want to collaborate on.
 2. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Start Collaboration Session**.
STEP RESULT: The Initiate Session dialog appears.
 3. In the **Session Subject** field, enter a session name.
 4. If you want to open a Markup for the Collaboration Session, click **Browse** and browse and select the markup you want to open.
 5. Select **Public** if you want the Collaboration Session visible to others who may want to join the session.
 6. Select **Private** if you want the Collaboration Session only visible to the participants.
 7. If you want to set a password for the Collaboration Session, enter a **Password**, then enter it again to **Confirm**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If you selected **Private** and chose not to set password, when you click **OK**, a confirmation dialog appears asking if you are sure you do not want to set a password.
 8. From the Users list, select the users that you want to invite.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The Users list shows all users connected to the AutoVue server
 9. Click **Add**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To remove a user, select the user from the Invited list and click **Remove**.
STEP RESULT: The user you selected appears in the Invited list.
 10. To designate a user as an **Observer**, select the check box under **Invited**.
 11. Click **OK**.
-


RESULT: AutoVue goes into **Collaboration** mode and the session is started. The user or users that are invited receive a tooltip notification that he or she has been invited to join the session. The notification message indicates the Session Name, File and Initiator.

Changing a User's Layer Color of a Session

TASK

1. In the Initiate Session dialog, click **Layer Color**.
STEP RESULT: The Layer Color dialog appears.
 2. Select a **Layer Color** from the list or select **Let user choose** if you want the user to choose their own color.
 3. Click **OK**.
STEP RESULT: In the Initiate Session dialog, the selected layers color appears beside the **Username** in the Invited list.
-

RESULT:

If you selected **Let user choose**, a custom color icon  appears beside the **Username**, indicating that the color can be changed **By User**.

Adding New Users to a Session

You can also invite users that are not currently online using the Add New button on the Initiate Session dialog.

TASK

1. In the Initiate Session dialog, click **Add New**.
STEP RESULT: The Add User dialog appears.
 2. Enter **Username**.
 3. Select **Observer** if you want to designate the user as an Observer.
 4. Select a **Layer Color** from the list or select **Let user choose** if you want the user to choose their own color.
 5. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT:

The new user is added to the Invited list in the Initiate Session dialog.

NOTE: To add more than one user, repeat steps 1 to 5.

Opening a Markup While Initiating a Session

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Start Collaboration Session**.
STEP RESULT: The Initiate Session dialog appears.
 2. Click **Browse**.
STEP RESULT: The Markup Files dialog appears.
 3. In the Select Markup File(s) list, select the check box beside the Markup that you want to open.
 4. To import a Markup file, click **Import**.
STEP RESULT: The Select markup file to import dialog appears.
 5. Locate the file that you want to open.
 6. Click **Open**.
 7. Click **OK** in the Markup Files dialog.
 8. In the Initiate Session dialog, select **Session Markup** if you want to open a Session Markup and keep the layer colors and markup entities from the Collaboration Session.
 9. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT: The selected Markup appears in the Initiate Session dialog.

Opening a Markup During a Session

The Host can open Markups during a Collaboration Session. These Markups can be session markups created during Collaboration Sessions or any non-session Markup files.

TASK

1. During a Collaboration Session, from the **Markup** menu, select **Open**.
STEP RESULT: A confirmation dialog appears, prompting you to save the current Session Markup.
 2. Click **Yes** or **No** or Cancel.
STEP RESULT: The Markup Files dialog appears.
 3. Select the check box beside the Markup that you want to open.
 4. To import a Markup file, click **Import**.
STEP RESULT: The Select Markup File to Import dialog appears.
 5. Locate the file that you want to open.
-

6. Click **Open**.
 7. In the Markup Files dialog, select **Session Markup** if you want to open a Session Markup and keep the layer colors and markup entities from the Collaboration Session.
 8. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT: The selected Markup appears in the Collaboration window.

Joining a Session

You can either join a collaboration session that you are invited to or to a session for which you have been provided the session ID and password. When you are invited to a collaboration session, you get a tooltip notification. If you do not want to receive any notifications when you are invited to a Collaboration Sessions, select Do Not Disturb from the **Collaborate** menu.

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Join Collaboration Session**.
STEP RESULT: The Join Session dialog appears.
 2. From the Session ID list, select the active session you want to join.
 3. Enter the **Password** if the Host has set one.
 4. If you just want to be an **Observer**, select the check box.
 5. If you want to select a layer color, click **Layer Color**, select a color from the list in the Layer Color dialog and click OK.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The **Layer Color** is disabled if the Host did not select **Let user choose** when initiating the Collaboration Session or when you are invited to join the session.
STEP RESULT: The Layer Color dialog appears.
 6. Click **OK** in the Join Session dialog.
-

RESULT: You have joined the session.

Inviting Users During a Session

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Invite**.
STEP RESULT: The Invite dialog appears.

2. From the Online list, select the user or users that you want to invite.
3. Click **Add**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: You can add users that are going to join the session at a later time by clicking **Add New** and entering the **Username**.
STEP RESULT: The user or users you selected appears in the Invited list.
4. Click **OK**.

RESULT: The users receive a tooltip notification that he or she has been invited to join the session.

Removing Users from a Session

When initiating a Collaboration Session, if you added a user by mistake and would like to remove a user that has been added to the Invited list, you can do so. You cannot remove Invited users once the Collaboration Session is in progress.

TASK

1. In the Invite dialog, locate the Invited list.
STEP RESULT: The Invite dialog appears.
2. From the Invited list, select the user or users that you want to remove.
3. Click **Remove**.
STEP RESULT: The user or users you selected appear in the Online list.
4. Click **OK**.

RESULT: The users receive a tooltip notification that he or she is no longer invited to the session.

Assigning a Host During a Session

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Assign Host**.
STEP RESULT: The Assign Host dialog appears.
2. From the Users list, select the user that you want to assign as host.
3. Click **OK**.

RESULT: The user you selected is now the host of the Collaboration Session.

Passing Control of a Session to Another User

When you initiate a Collaboration Session, you are the default Controller of the session until you relinquish control to another user. You may grant control to another user any time during the session. Once you grant control to another user, all other users will automatically lock their views to the new Controller.

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Pass Control**.
STEP RESULT: The Grant Control dialog appears.
 2. From the Users list, select the user that you want to grant control to.
 3. Click **OK**.
-

RESULT: The user you selected has control of the Collaboration Session.

Saving a Session Markup

The Host owns the Session Markup and is the only one who can save it.

TASK

1. At the end of the Collaboration Session, from the **Markup** menu, select **Save As**.
STEP RESULT: The Save Markup File As dialog appears.
 2. Enter the **Markup ID**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: The **Markup Information** is optional.
 3. Click **OK** to save.
-

RESULT: The session Markup is saved and appears as a markup note entity with the control history and chat transcript.

Closing a Session

Only a Host can close a Collaboration Session.


TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Close Collaboration Session**.
STEP RESULT: The Save Markup dialog appears prompting you to save the Session Markup.
 2. Click **Yes**.
-

RESULT: All users are notified that the Collaboration Session is closed.

Requesting Control of a Session

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Request Control**.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Collaboration status bar, you can also click **Request Control** .
STEP RESULT: The Controller receives a message that you have requested control.
 2. The Controller clicks **OK**.
-

RESULT:

You become the Controller of the Collaboration Session.

NOTE: If the Controller does not respond within 10 seconds, control is automatically granted to the user who requested it.

Tracking Changes

The **Show Presenter Window** option allows you to simultaneously track the Controller's base file view changes and everyone's markup changes while your markup file remains unchanged.

You must be in an unlocked view state before selecting **Show Presenter Window**.

From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Show Presenter Window**.


You can now track changes without affecting your view.

Unlocking a View

If you do not want to see the Controller's view changes, clear the Lock View.

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu click **Lock View to Presenter**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Collaborate status bar, you can also click **Unlock View** .

STEP RESULT: The Lock View to Presenter option is deselected.

2. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Show Presenter Window** if you want to simultaneously track the Controller's base file view changes and everyone's markup changes while your markup file remains unchanged.

RESULT:

You can now track changes without affecting your view.


NOTE: The **Show Presenter Window** option is only available when the view is unlocked.

Locking a View

The **Lock View to Presenter** option allows you view changes the Controller is making. When you select the **Lock View to Presenter** option, you are also propagating your markup modifications to the other participants in the session. **Lock View to Presenter** is the default for all participants in a session.

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Lock View to Presenter**

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Collaborate status bar, you can also click **Lock View to Presenter** .

RESULT: The **Lock View to Presenter** option is highlighted.

Viewing Session Information

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Session Information**.

STEP RESULT: The Session Information dialog appears displaying the **Session Subject**, **Session ID**, **File Name**, **Host**, and **Users** of the session.

2. Click **Close**.
-

Leaving a Session

Only a Host can close a Collaboration Session. All other participants can leave a Collaboration Session and rejoin at a later time if it is still in session.

From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Leave Collaboration Session**.

The other participants are notified that you left the Collaboration Session and AutoVue returns to View mode.

Chat Window

The **Chat Window**, is a tool you can use to communicate with other users. You send each other messages via the Chat Window. The Chat Window is also useful in giving you Collaboration Session updates such as which users are present and which users have joined or left the session.

At the end of the Collaboration Session, a transcript of the Chat Window is saved as a **Note** entity along with the Markup as the Collaboration Session Markup file. The **Note** entity contains session information such who the Host was, who was invited and session time and duration.

The Chat Window contains these menu options:


Menu	Option	Description
File	Send Message	Sends text messages to other users.
	Print	Prints the contents of the Chat window.
	Quit	Closes the Chat window.

Menu	Option	Description
Edit	Copy	Copy text from the Chat window.
	Clear	Clears all the text in the Chat window.
	Find Text	Searches for text in the Chat window.
	Select All	Selects the entire text in the Chat window.
Options	Users	Displays the users in the Collaboration Session.

Sending a Message to Selected Users

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Show Chat Window**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Collaborate status bar, you can also click **Show Chat Window** .

STEP RESULT: The Chat dialog appears.

2. Select **Selected users**.

STEP RESULT: A list of **Users** appear in the Chat dialog.

3. Under **Users**, select the user or users that you want to send the message to.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: To select more than one user, press the **Shift** or **Control** key while selecting.


4. In the **Send Message to** field, enter your message.
5. Click **Send**.

RESULT: The private message is sent to the selected users of the Collaboration Session.

Sending a Message to All Users

TASK

1. From the **Collaborate** menu, select **Show Chat Window**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the Collaborate status bar, you can also click **Show Chat Window** .

STEP RESULT: The Chat dialog appears.

2. Select **All Users**.

3. In the **Send Message to** field, enter your message.
 4. Click **Send**.
-

RESULT: The message is sent to all users in the Collaboration Session.

AutoVue in Offline Mode

The offline mode option in AutoVue provides you with the ability to view and markup files when you do not have access to the AutoVue server or backend DMS system.

***NOTE:** Going offline is supported from windows-based clients only. This functionality is also only available when for the Client/Server deployment of AutoVue.*

Many AutoVue users require access to their files when they are not connected to their backend systems. For example, having offline access to files is essential when you need to add markups to a document during your regular commute or when bringing all your files when on a business trip.

When you select the **Work Offline** option from the Client/Server deployment of AutoVue, a predefined list of files and associated resources and markups are copied to your local system as *offline files* and a local installation of AutoVue is deployed. Once installation is complete you can continue working on your files with AutoVue in offline mode.

***NOTE:** When going offline for the first time, the AutoVue installer is automatically launched. The installation may take a few minutes depending on your internet connection and the speed of your local machine.*

Managing Offline Files

This section explains how to configure options for the offline files from AutoVue.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu of the Client/Server deployment of AutoVue, select **Work Offline**.

***ADDITIONAL INFORMATION:** If you are working in offline mode, select **Manage Offline Files** from the **File** menu.*

***STEP RESULT:** The Offline Files dialog appears.*

2. To modify the offline files options, click **Options**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If there are already files listed in the Offline Files dialog, you cannot change the offline options. To change the options, you must select each file and click **Remove**. Once all the files have been removed, click **OK** to close the Offline Files dialog. Reopen the Offline Files dialog and then click **Options**.

STEP RESULT: The Offline File Options dialog appears.

3. The **Offline Files Storage** field displays the default location where offline files are saved. Click **Browse** to save the offline files to another location.
4. Under **Base File**, select to either include the native file or streaming file in the offline files.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If the streaming files are not available for a file, a warning appears and gives you the option to include the native file.

5. Under **Markup**, select whether to include all associated Markup files in the offline files.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: By default, all viewable markups are included.

6. Under **Security**, select whether you want to password-protect the offline files and all associate functions.

7. Click **OK**.

STEP RESULT: The Offline File Options dialog closes.

Working in Offline Mode

The Work Offline option in the Client/Server deployment of AutoVue provides you with the ability to view and markup files when you do not have access to the AutoVue server or backend DMS system.

TASK

1. From the **File** menu, select **Work Offline**.
2. To modify offline files options, click **Options**. See “Managing Offline Files” for more information.
3. To add offline files, click **Add**.

STEP RESULT: The File Open dialog appears.

4. Browse to a file and click **Open**.

STEP RESULT: The file is added to the Offline Files list. Repeat for any additional files.

5. When you are finished adding offline files, click **OK**.

- From the Offline Files dialog, click **OK** to work offline.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: If this is your first time working in offline mode, the AutoVue installer is automatically launched. Follow the on-screen instructions to install AutoVue in the preferred location.

STEP RESULT: The Updated offline files dialog appears.

RESULT:

AutoVue automatically opens once the offline files have been updated. The offline files are created with all associated markups and saved to your local system. With AutoVue you can continue working on your files.

NOTE: Since you are in offline mode, *Work Offline* is selected under the *File* menu.


See “Opening Offline Files” for information on opening offline files from AutoVue.

Opening Offline Files

When in offline mode, you can continue working on offline files.

TASK

- From the **File** menu, select **Open**.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION: From the AutoVue toolbar, you can also click **Open File** .

STEP RESULT: The File Open dialog appears.

- From the left panel, select **Offline** .

STEP RESULT: The offline files appear in the dialog. An Authentication Information dialog appears if the files are password protected. If so, enter the login information.

- Select an offline file and then click **Open**.

RESULT:

The offline file opens with all associated markups and resources. You can continue working on your files.

Removing Offline Files from AutoVue

When working in AutoVue in offline mode, you can remove offline files.

TASK

- From the **File** menu select **Manage Offline Files**.

STEP RESULT: The Offline Files dialog appears.

2. Select the offline files you want to remove and then click **Remove**.
STEP RESULT: A dialog appears verifying that you want to remove the offline files.
 3. Click **Yes**.
-

RESULT:

The offline files are removed.

Synchronizing Files in Offline Mode

When you have access to the server/backend DMS system, you can synchronize your local changes to the server/backend system. You can bring any new Markup files you created while offline to the server/backend system, or you can update the offline Markup files with changes from the server/backend system.

To synchronize files, select **Synchronize Offline Files** from the **File** menu.

NOTE: If you are connecting to a backend system, you are prompted for login information.

If there are conflicts during synchronization, AutoVue prompts you with the following options:

- **Keep offline version:** Replace Markup files that are on the server/backend system with the offline file changes.
- **Keep online version:** Replace the offline files with the server/backend system Markup files.
- **Save Markup Files As:** Rename the offline files and then save to the server/backend system.

After you make your selection click **OK**.

Going Back Online

When you have access to the AutoVue server or backend DMS system, you can choose to go back online by deselecting **Work Offline** from the **File** menu.

A prompt appears verifying that you want to synchronize your offline files with the files on the online version. Click **Yes** to continue to online mode and to synchronize your files.

You can continue working in the Client/Server deployment or local installation of AutoVue.

See “Synchronizing Files in Offline Mode” for more information on synchronizing files.

Appendix A: EDA Terms and Definitions

The following table presents commonly used EDA terms and their corresponding definitions.

EDA Term	Definition
Annular ring	A circular strip of conductive material that remains after a hole has been drilled through the pad of a printed circuit board.
Anti-copper	An area within a fill zone in which copper cannot be placed.
Aperture	An opening, similar to the aperture of a camera, that is used for photo-plotting. Apertures are available in various sizes and shapes.
Aperture list	A text file containing the dimensions for each of the apertures used to photo-plot PCB artwork.
Clusters	Components that are grouped according to their interrelationships and placed in close proximity on the board. This keeps the connections on the PCB short so that the board is easier to work with.
Component	An element or a part of a PCB.
Component density	The quantity of components on a unit area of a PCB.
Component hole	A hole in the printed circuit board that corresponds to a pin or wire of a component. This hole serves the dual function of attaching the component to the board and establishing the electrical connection between the pin or wire and the remainder of the board circuitry.
Component library	A computer data file that contains the footprint patterns for a number of components.

EDA Term	Definition
Component side	The uppermost or top layer of a board on which most components are placed.
Component silkscreen	The silkscreen markings of the printed circuit board that appear on the component side. The silkscreen is applied over the solder mask.
Component solder mask	The colored, usually translucent, coating applied to the board over the etched copper. It protects the selected areas from the soldering process.
Connection	An unrouted, partially routed, or completely routed path between two pads. In a net with n pads, there are exactly $n-1$ connections.
Copper pour	A method by which a copper zone is filled with a specified pattern, with objects that cross the zone or lie within the zone being avoided.
Copper zone	An area on a board designed to be covered by a layer of copper when manufactured. Also known as a "metal zone".
Cross hatching	The breaking up of large conductive areas by the use of a pattern of lines and spaces in the conductive material.
Datum	A specific location (a point) that serves as a reference to locate a PCB pattern or layer for manufacture.
Density	On a PCB, the degree to which components are packed on the board. Generally, the density is given as the number of square inches per equivalent, i.e., a lower number indicates a more dense board.
Discrete components	Components with three or fewer electrical connections (for example, resistors or capacitors).
Electrical check	The process of checking the PCB to ensure that the connections they are on match those specified in the net list.
Fill zone	A zone that defines an area to be filled with copper.
Fine pitch	A class of surface-mount components that is characterized by pins measuring 0.025 inches or less from pad center to pad center.

EDA Term	Definition
Footprint	The physical description of a component. It consists of three elements: padstacks, representing the pads of the component; obstacles, representing among other things, the physical outline of the component, silkscreens, keepouts/keepins, and assembly drawing data; and text documenting the footprint information (for example, the component name). You may want each project to have its own footprint library containing all the footprints used in that project.
Ground plane	A large area on the PCB, usually an entire layer, that provides a common ground connection for all component ground pins and other ground connections.
Heatsink	A mechanical device made of a high thermal conductivity material that dissipates heat generated by a component or assembly.
Heuristics	A method of routing that consists of repeated attempts to apply very simple routing patterns to unrouted connections in order to complete the routing quickly and cleanly. Typically, heuristics are used for memory and short point-to-point routing.
Hole	The area where board material must be removed by drilling or milling.
Isolation	The clearance around a pad, track, zone, or via that defines the nearest approach allowed by conductors of another signal set.
Jumper wire	A discrete electrical component or wire used to make electrical connections between points that have no copper etch due to board density or some other factor.
Keepout	An area fill within which no routing is allowed.
Land	The copper pad needed for a surface mount pin.
Layer	The copper pad needed for a surface mount pin.
Manual routing	Individual connections, in the form of traces, vertices, arcs, and so on, which are entered manually into the PCB design.
Mounting hole	A hole used for the mechanical support of a PCB or for the mechanical attachment of components to a PCB.

EDA Term	Definition
Multi-layer board	A PCB that has multiple layers, separated by dielectric material, with connectivity between layers established by vias or through-holes. This term usually refers to a board with more than two layers.
Net	A logical construct (circuit) that originates in a schematic and is transferred to a board to describe required electrical connections. The connections may be completed by using vias, tracks, or zones.
Net list	List of names of symbols or parts and their connection points which are logically connected in each net of a circuit. A net list can be extracted electronically on a computer from a properly prepared schematic.
Obstacle	An outline representing an object on the board. It must be taken into account during routing, placement, or copper pour.
Pad	On a PCB, a copper shape on one or more layers (there may be a hole and an isolation surrounding the copper) used for connecting a component pin to the PCB. The pad indicates where pins of a component are placed.
Padstack	A numbered list of pad descriptions. Each description contains a pad definition, including layer, style, drill diameter, size, offset, and solder mask guard width.
PCB - Printed Circuit Board	A PCB is a board made up of components affixed to a common surface and connected by copper tracks.
Pin	The portion of a component to which an electrical connection can be made.
Ratsnest	A number of unrouted straight-line connections between two or more pads that represent the electrical connections in the netlist. The ratsnest serves as a reminder that the pads must be connected, and that, currently, there is no track on the board to make that connection.
Reference designator	A character string denoting the type of component and a number that is specific to that component.

EDA Term	Definition
Routing	Placing conductive interconnects between components on a PCB layout. The process of turning nets into tracks.
Schematic	A graphical description of an electrical circuit.
Segment	The partial track that exists between two adjacent vertices or between a vertex and a pin. Sometimes the track between two pins is also called a segment, although connection is usually the more appropriate term here.
Signal	An electrical impulse of a predetermined voltage, current, polarity, and pulse width.
Silkscreen	Text or outlines (in ink) on the solder mask, on the top, and sometimes on the bottom of board modules. A silkscreen is used for component and identification placement on a PCB and usually includes component outlines, reference designators, polarity indicators, pin one markings, part numbers, the company name, and copyright info.
SMT - Surface Mount Technology	PCB technology whereby the leads on the chips and components are soldered onto the surface of the board rather than inserted into it. The use of SMT results in smaller and faster printed circuit boards.
Solder mask	A negative plot of pads with a guard band around the pads. Also, a lacquer applied to prevent solder from adhering to unwanted areas on the PCB.
Solder paste	A pattern that serves as a template for solder paste application when the board is manufactured.
Solder side	The PCB surface opposite the one on which most components are mounted (component side). Also, the bottom layer of the board.
Test point	A special point of access to an electrical circuit that is used for electrical testing purposes.
Through-hole via	A via that connects the surface layers on a PCB.
Trace (Track)	The copper trails (electrical connection between two or more points) on the PCB and the onscreen representation of that copper.

EDA Term	Definition
Venting patterns	Patterns etched in the board that allow gases formed during fabrication to escape.
Vertex	A logical point at which a track is ended and restarted. A vertex is located at each change of direction on the track.
Via (feed-through hole)	A hole connecting layers of a PCB. A through-hole via connects the surface layers of a board. On multilayer boards, a via not reaching a surface layer on one side is called a blind via, and a via not reaching a surface layer on either side, thus being externally invisible, is called a buried via.
Viastack	A numbered list of via descriptions. Each description contains a via definition, including layer, style, drill diameter, size, offset, and solder mask guard width.
Via string	The copper etch that exists between a SMT pad and a corresponding fanout via.
Zero-length connection	An unrouted connection between layers where the end points in the connection have the same X- and Y- coordinates.
Zone	An area on a PCB layer designated as copper or anti-copper. Copper zones may have net names, while anti-copper zones may not.

Appendix B: AutoVue Product Variations – Feature Matrix

The following tables list the available features of the AutoVue Enterprise Visualization product family. The tables are organized by the following features: general features, 2-D and EDA common features, 2-D features, EDA features, 3-D features, markup features, and collaboration features.

Note that several of the following features are supported only if the file that is being viewed in AutoVue contains relevant information.

General Features					
Feature	AutoVue Office	AutoVue 2D Professional	AutoVue 3D Professional Advanced	AutoVue EDA Professional	AutoVue Electro-Mechanical Professional
File Properties	x	x	x	x	x
Edit, Select, and Copy	x	x	x	x	x
Open URL	x	x	x	x	x
Open File from Server	x	x	x	x	x
Open File from Backend System	x	x	x	x	x
Open Local File	x	x	x	x	x
Page Navigation	x	x	x	x	x
Print					
Batch Print	x	x	x	x	x
Java Printing	x	x	x	x	x
Native Printing ¹	x	x	x	x	x
Print Preview	x	x	x	x	x
Conversion					
Basic Conversion	x	x	x	x	x
Conversion to 3-D			x	x	x
Conversion to PDF ²	x	x	x	x	x
Configuration ³	x	x	x	x	x
Work in Offline Mode ⁴	x	x	x	x	x

¹Not supported when AutoVue Server is installed on Linux OSes.

²Not supported for 3-D designs and when AutoVue Server is installed on Linux OSes.

³AutoVue provides different configuration options for different file types.

⁴Available only in the Client/Server deployment of AutoVue

2-D Common Features (Raster/Graphics, 2-D Vector, Desktop/Office, EDA)					
Feature	AutoVue Office	AutoVue 2D Professional	AutoVue 3D Professional Advanced	AutoVue EDA Professional	AutoVue Electro-Mechanical Professional
Overlays	x	x	x	x	x
Text Search ⁵	x	x	x	x	x
Basic Manipulation					
Flip	x	x	x	x	x
Rotate	x	x	x	x	x
Zoom	x	x	x	x	x
Special View Modes					
Magnify Glass	x	x	x	x	x
Magnify Window	x	x	x	x	x
Pan	x	x	x	x	x
Pan and Zoom Window ⁶	x	x	x	x	x
Compare					
Align and Scale	x	x	x	x	x
Compare Files	x	x	x	x	x

⁵Not supported for raster formats.

⁶Not supported for spreadsheet formats.

Raster/Graphics Features					
Feature	AutoVue Office	AutoVue 2D Professional	AutoVue 3D Professional Advanced	AutoVue EDA Professional	AutoVue Electro-Mechanical Professional
Image Enhancements					
Anti-Alias ⁷	x	x	x	x	x
Contrast ⁷	x	x	x	x	x
Invert ⁷	x	x	x	x	x

⁷Applies to raster formats and to raster overlays in other formats

2-D (Vector Features)					
Feature	AutoVue Office	AutoVue 2D Professional	AutoVue 3D Professional Advanced	AutoVue EDA Professional	AutoVue Electro-Mechanical Professional
Measurements					
Entity Snapping		x	x	x	x
Angle	x	x	x	x	x
Arc	x	x	x	x	x
Area	x	x	x	x	x
Calibration	x	x	x	x	x
Distance	x	x	x	x	x
2-D CAD Features					
Blocks		x	x		x
Drawing Information ⁸		x	x		x
Layers		x	x		x
Views		x	x		x
XRefs		x	x		x
Conversion					
Change Pen Settings		x	x		x
Printing					
Create/Assign Pen Settings		x	x		x

⁸Only available when AutoVue Server is installed on Windows OSes.

EDA Features					
Feature	AutoVue Office	AutoVue 2D Professional	AutoVue 3D Professional Advanced	AutoVue EDA Professional	AutoVue Electro-Mechanical Professional
Bill of Material (BOM)				x	x
Blocks				x	x
Cross Probe				x	x
Design Hierarchy Navigation				x	x
Design Verification				x	x
EDA Layers				x	x
Entity Filters				x	x
Entity Properties				x	x
Entity Search				x	x
Entity Selection				x	x
Go to Net Instance				x	x
Layer Sets				x	x
EDA Measurement					
Entity Snapping				x	x
Angle				x	x
Arc				x	x
Area				x	x
Calibration				x	x
Distance				x	x
Minimum Distance				x	x
Compare					
Layer State Propagation				x	x

3-D Features					
Feature	AutoVue Office	AutoVue 2D Professional	AutoVue 3D Professional Advanced	AutoVue EDA Professional	AutoVue Electro-Mechanical Professional
Basic 3-D Manipulation					
3-D Render Modes			x	x ⁹	x
Change Part Color			x	x ⁹	x
Change Transparency			x	x ⁹	x
Free Rotate			x	x ⁹	x
Expand/Collapse Tree			x	x ⁹	x
Identical Part Detection			x	x ⁹	x
Light Settings			x	x ⁹	x
Manipulators			x	x ⁹	x
Re-center			x	x ⁹	x
Selection			x	x ⁹	x
Spin			x	x ⁹	x
Advanced 3-D Manipulation					
3-D Digital Mockup			x		x
Text Search in 3-D			x	x ⁹	x
3-D Entity Properties			x	x ⁹	x
Bill of Material (BOM)			x	x ⁹	x
Electro-Mechanical Digital Mockup					x
Explode			x	x ⁹	x
Interference Checks			x	x ⁹	x
Part Alignment			x	x ⁹	x
PMI Filtering			x		x
Section			x	x ⁹	x
Transformation			x	x ⁹	x
User-Defined Coordinate Systems			x	x ⁹	x
User-Defined View			x	x ⁹	x
3-D Measurements					
Entity Snapping			x	x ⁹	x
Angle			x	x ⁹	x

⁹The 3-D features in AutoVue EDA Professional are only available when viewing 3-D PCBs.

3-D Features					
Feature	AutoVue Office	AutoVue 2D Professional	AutoVue 3D Professional Advanced	AutoVue EDA Professional	AutoVue Electro-Mechanical Professional
Arc			x	x ⁹	x
Calibrate			x	x ⁹	x
Distance			x	x ⁹	x
Edge			x	x ⁹	x
Minimum Distance			x	x ⁹	x
Surface			x	x ⁹	x
Vertex Coordinates			x	x ⁹	x
3-D Search					
3-D Entity Search			x	x ⁹	x
3-D Text Search			x	x ⁹	x
Compare					
Compare 3-D Designs			x	x ⁹	x
Compare Sets			x	x ⁹	x
Walkthrough			x	x ⁹	x

⁹The 3-D features in AutoVue EDA Professional are only available when viewing 3-D PCBs.

Markup Features					
Feature	AutoVue Office	AutoVue 2D Professional	AutoVue 3D Professional Advanced	AutoVue EDA Professional	AutoVue Electro-Mechanical Professional
Create and Save	x	x	x	x	x
Consolidate	x	x	x	x	x
Import/Export	x	x	x	x	x
Layers	x	x	x	x	x
Markup Filtering	x	x	x	x	x
Markup Information	x	x	x	x	x
Modify	x	x	x	x	x
Saved States	x	x	x	x	x
Markup Entities					
Attachment	x	x	x	x	x
Hyperlink	x	x	x	x	x
Intellistamp	x	x	x	x	x

Markup Features					
Feature	AutoVue Office	AutoVue 2D Professional	AutoVue 3D Professional Advanced	AutoVue EDA Professional	AutoVue Electro-Mechanical Professional
Leader	x	x	x	x	x
Note	x	x	x	x	x
Signoff	x	x	x	x	x
Stamp	x	x	x	x	x
Stamp Library	x	x	x	x	x
Text	x	x	x	x	x
2-D Markup Entities					
Arc	x	x	x	x	x
Box	x	x	x	x	x
Circle	x	x	x	x	x
Cloud	x	x	x	x	x
Freestyle	x	x	x	x	x
Highlight	x	x	x	x	x
Line	x	x	x	x	x
Polygon	x	x	x	x	x
Polyline	x	x	x	x	x
Markup Measurement Entities					
2-D Measurement	x	x	x	x	x
3-D Measurement			x	x ¹⁰	x
EDA Measurement				x	x

¹⁰The 3-D features in AutoVue EDA Professional are only available when viewing 3-D PCBs.

Collaboration					
Feature	AutoVue Office	AutoVue 2D Professional	AutoVue 3D Professional Advanced	AutoVue EDA Professional	AutoVue Electro-Mechanical Professional
Real-Time Collaboration	x	x	x	x	x
AutoVue Mobile					
Create Mobile Pack ¹¹	x	x	x	x	x
Markup Mobile Pack	x	x	x	x	x
Update from Mobile Pack ¹¹	x	x	x	x	x
View Mobile Pack	x	x	x	x	x

¹¹This feature requires installation of the AutoVue Mobile product.

Index

Numerics

2D

- markup entities 225
- markups 211, 225
- measuring 51
 - non-vector
 - angle 56
 - arc 58
 - area 55
 - calibrating distance 54, 97, 166, 231, 238, 245, 257
 - distance 53
 - snapping modes 52, 235
 - vector
 - angle 57
 - arc 58
 - area 55
 - calibrating arc 59, 101, 169, 234, 241, 248, 259
 - vector files
 - distance 53
- non-vector markup measure entities 229
- text search 35
- vector files 41
 - analyzing 47
 - comparing 48
 - displaying layers 42
 - displaying xrefs 43
 - manipulate 41
 - overlay 44
 - modify 45
 - remove 46
 - selecting blocks 43
- vector markup measure entities 235
- viewing options 36
 - magnify glass 39
 - magnify window 40
 - pan and zoom window 40
 - selecting views 46

- specifying a view point 46
- working with 2D files 35

3D

- 3D views 120
- advanced 3D search 161
- bill of material 155
- Bookmarks tab 23, 65, 105
- comparing files 151, 152, 153
- coverting 294
- display attributes 114
 - color 116
 - transparency 116
 - visibility 115
- entity properties 123
- entity search 156, 158
 - attribute-based search 159
 - save results 162
- explode 142, 143
 - options 142
 - save 144
- files 103
- global axes 105
- interference checks 148, 149, 150
- light setting 117
 - ambient 117
 - directional 118
 - new light source 118
 - properties 119
 - remove light source 119
- manipulate mode 130
 - panning model 130
 - rotating model 131
 - scaling model 132
- manipulating views 112
- markup entities 252
- markup measure entities
 - create 253
- markups 211, 252
- measuring 162
 - angle 168
 - arc 168
 - calibrating arc 59, 101, 169, 234, 241, 248, 259
 - calibrating distance 54, 97, 166, 231, 238, 245, 257
 - distance 165

- edge length 170
- face surface 171
- minimum distance 167
- snapping modes 163, 254
- vertex coordinates 169
- mockups 111
 - delete 111
- Model Tree 108, 109, 110
 - hiding 110
 - XRefs 109
- Models tab 25, 103
- part alignment 132
 - align 134
 - constraints 133
- PMI entities 127
- recentering 107, 108
 - entity reference 107
- render modes 114, 115
- sectioning 139
 - cut options 140
 - exporting 141
 - options 140
 - section plane 141
- selecting model parts 106
- text markup 261
- transformation 135
 - buttons 136, 137, 138
 - reset 138
 - setting values 139
- user-defined coordinate system 144
- Views tab 26, 104
- 3D dynamic rendering 184
- 3D Model Tree 25, 103
- 3D rendering 184
- 3D views 120
 - camera view 120
 - default view 120
 - layers 123
 - native views 120
 - perspective 122
 - user-defined view 121
 - delete 121
 - view points 122

A

About dialog

- version and build information 19
- archive files 32
- arrow style 276
- AutoVue 17
 - basics 19
 - Client/Server deployment 327
 - Desktop deployment 327
 - graphical user interface 20
 - GUI
 - menu bar 20
 - toolbars 21
- AutoVue GUI
 - AutoVue properties toolbar 21
 - AutoVue toolbar 21
 - Markup entity toolbar 21
- AutoVue Mobile 299
 - markup policy 305
- Mobile Pack 299
 - create 300
 - create Markup files 305
 - update to backend system 309
 - view 303
- AutoVue properties toolbar 21
- AutoVue toolbar 21

B

- base font 182
- batch print 279, 291
- Bill of Material (BOM) 85
- Bookmarks tab 23, 65, 105
- build information 19
- bylayer 271

C

- calibrating arc 59, 101, 169, 234, 241, 248, 259
- calibrating distance 54, 97, 166, 231, 238, 245, 257
- change color
 - markup layer 207
- Components tab 24, 63
- configure 177
 - 2D 183
 - colors 183
 - snap settings 183
 - 3D 184

- align with current UCS 189
- background 188
- background gradient 188
- background images 188
- color 187
- dynamic load mesh resolution 186
- dynamic rendering 184
- frame rate 185
- geometry highlight 188
- initial visibility 186
- loading 185
- miscellaneous 189
- model 185
- PMI filtering 186
- PMI initial visibility 186
- rendering 184
- section highlight 188
- selection 190
- show global axes 189
- tree level 189
- base font 182
- CAD file options 178
- common 187, 193
- desktop office 194
- EDA 190
 - 3D PCB view 192
 - 3D view 194
 - colors 193
 - cross probing 193
 - dim unselected 190, 191
 - highlight entity 190, 191
 - synchronize layers 192
 - thicken highlighted entity 191
 - tooltips 191
- font paths 181
- general options 178
- graphic files 194
- measurement 182
- paths 180
- raster files 179
- rendering 179
- resources 180
- XRef paths 180
- convert 293
 - file 296
 - options 293

- PDF 295
 - pen settings 297
 - size 295
- create
 - markup layer 206
- cross probing 80, 82
 - net connectivity 83
 - two or more EDA files 81
 - zoom behavior 193
 - zooming 83
- custom color 277
- custom line color 274
- custom line thickness 275

D

- delete
 - markup layer 209
 - markups 267
- design verification 86, 90
 - design rule checks 87
 - exporting results 91
- DMS/ERP/PLM/UCM 221
- Do Not Disturb 318
- drawing information 49
 - set of entities 51
 - single entity 50
 - tag/attributes 50
- dynamic load mesh resolution 186

E

- EDA 61
 - 3D views 80
 - ascend hierarchy 72
 - BOM 85
 - comparing PCB 84
 - cross probing 80
 - design hierarchy 72
 - design verification 86
 - entity properties 70
 - entity properties 68
 - entity search 92, 93, 94
 - filtering entity types 68
 - layer sets 77
 - layers 73
 - manipulating views 80

- measuring 95
 - angle 100
 - arc 101
 - calibrating arc 59, 101, 169, 234, 241, 248, 259
 - calibrating distance 54, 97, 166, 231, 238, 245, 257
 - distance 97
 - minimum distance 98
 - snapping modes 96, 242
- net connectivity 70
- net instances 71
- net properties 71
- selecting entities 65, 66
 - entity search dialog 67
- terms and definitions 331
- zooming to an entity 67
- enable look ahead 179
- entity properties 123
 - attributes 123, 124
 - extents 126
 - mass properites 125
 - mass properties 124
- entity properties dialog box 68
- entity reference 107
- entity search dialog 67
- export
 - Markup file 204

F

- file
 - convert 296
 - file properties 32
 - open 28
 - print 290
- file properties 32, 127
- file version information 19
- files
 - archive 32
 - open from server 29, 30, 31, 329
 - open local 28
 - open url 29
 - properties 32
 - streaming file 31
- fill color 271, 277
- fill type 276

- filtering entity types 68
- font 272
- font paths 181
- frame rate 185
- From 51

G

- GUI 20

H

- header/footer 283

I

- import
 - Markup file 203
- insert codes 283

L

- layer sets 77
 - user-defined layers sets
 - create 78
 - delete 79
 - save with markups 79
 - viewing 77
- layers 73, 123, 192
 - changing color 76
 - changing order 74
 - logical layer visibility 75
 - logical layers 73
 - sorting 77
 - physical layer visibility 74
 - physical layers 73
- leader alignment 278
- line color 271, 274
- line style 274
- line thickness 275

M

- magnify glass 39
- magnify window 40
- makrups
 - hyperlink 252, 264
- Markup Entity Properties dialog 273
- Markup entity toolbar 21
- Markup file 18

- create 305
- Markup files 200
- Markup Filter 199
- Markup Indicator 28, 197
- markup layers 277
- Markup Navigation Tree 27, 198
- Markup Panel 27, 198
- markup policy 305
- markups 197, 200
 - 2D 225
 - markup entities 225
 - 2D non-vector measure 229
 - angle 233, 258
 - arc 233
 - area 232
 - calibrate arc 59, 101, 169, 234, 241, 248, 259
 - calibrate distance 54, 97, 166, 231, 238, 245, 257
 - cumulative distance 231
 - distance 230
 - 2D vector measure 235
 - angle 239
 - arc 240, 258
 - area 99, 238
 - calibrate arc 59, 101, 169, 234, 241, 248, 259
 - calibrate distance 54, 97, 166, 231, 238, 245, 257
 - cumulative distance 237, 244
 - 3D 252
 - text 261
 - 3D markup entities 252
 - 3D measure
 - angle 239
 - arc 240, 258
 - create 253
 - minimum distance 260
 - vertex coordinates 261
 - attachment 212, 252, 264
 - edit 213
 - open 212
 - change arrow style 270
 - change fill color 271
 - change fill type 270
 - change font 272
 - change line color 268
 - change line style 269
 - change line thickness 269
 - color 271
 - consolidate Markup files 210
 - delete 267
 - EDA measure
 - angle 246
 - arc 247
 - area 245
 - cumulative distance 237, 244
 - distance 243
 - EDA
 - markup measure entities 241
 - minimum distance 249
 - Entity Types 199
 - filtering 199
 - flipping all markups 266
 - formatting markup properties 268
 - freestyle 227
 - contiguous 227
 - non-contiguous 227
 - go to 264
 - grouping 266, 267
 - hiding all markups 266
 - hiding selected markups 266
 - hyperlink 213
 - create 213
 - delete 215
 - edit 215
 - open 215
 - intellistamp 217
 - add 220
 - view attributes 221
 - layers 206
 - change color 207
 - create 206
 - delete 209
 - moving a markup entity 209
 - rename 208
 - set active 207
 - toggle 208
 - leader 228
 - marking up 2D files 211
 - marking up 3D files 211
 - Markup Entity Properties dialog 273

- arrow style 276
- custom color 277
- custom line color 274
- custom line thickness 275
- fill color 277
- fill type 276
- leader alignment 278
- line color 274
- line style 274
- line thickness 275
- markup layers 277
- text box visibility 278
- Markup file 18
 - create 201
 - export 204
 - import 203
 - open 202
 - save 202, 203
 - save view 200
 - set active 205
 - view 205
- Markup files 200
- Markup Filter 199
- markup information 201
- Markup Navigation Tree 27, 198
- Markup Panel 27, 198
- measurement units and symbols 273
- moving markups 265
- nesting entities 252, 264
- note 251, 263
- rotating all markups 265
- rotating selected markups 265
- selecting markups 264
- signoff 216
 - history 217
 - re-approve 217
 - rescind 216
- stamp 222
- stamp library 223
 - delete 224
- text 250
 - text box visibility 250
- transforming markups 265
- ungrouping 267
- working with markup entities 264
- markups:intellistamp:design 218

- mass properties 124, 125
- Measure Distance
 - 2D non-vector 53
- measurement units and symbols 273
- Missing Resource icon 44
- missing resources 44
- missing XRef notification icon 109
- Mobile Pack 299, 305
 - update to backend system 309
- Model tab 25, 103
- Model Tree 25, 103, 108, 109, 110
 - hiding 110
 - XRefs 109
- Models tab 25, 103

N

- native print settings 286
- Navigation Panel 22, 61, 66
 - Bookmarks tab 23, 65, 105
 - Components tab 24, 63
 - customizing 62
 - Models tab and Model 25, 103
 - Models tab and Model Tree 25, 103
 - Nets tab 24, 64
 - Views tab 26, 104
- net connectivity 70
- Nets tab 24, 64

O

- offline files 327
 - manage 327
 - remove 329
- offline mode 327, 328
- offline mode:offline files 327
- open
 - file 28
 - Markup file 202
- Oracle AutoVue 17

P

- pan and zoom window 40
- partial print preview 289
- pen settings 288
- PMI entities 127
 - aligning 128

- configuring 129
 - captures 129
 - reference frames 129
 - views 129
- filtering 128
- go to 128
- hyperlinks 130
- PMI filtering 186
- PMI initial visibility 186
- print 279
 - batch print 291
 - file 290
 - header/footer 283, 286
 - add 284
 - margins 282
 - set 283
 - options 279
 - configure 282
 - partial preview 282, 289
 - pen settings 288
 - create 289
 - delete 289
 - preview a file 290
 - watermarks 286
 - add 287

Q

Quick Menus 28

R

real-time collaboration 311

- chat window 323
 - send message to selected users 324
- Collaboration Session 311
- Collaboration user tree 311
- Controller 312
- Host 312
- Lock View to Presenter 312
- Observer 313
- Pointer 313
- session 314
 - add new users 316
 - assign host 319
 - close session 321
 - initiate 315

- invite users 318
- join 318
- layer color 316
- leave collaboration session 323
- Lock View to Presenter 322
- open a markup 317
- pass control 320
- remove users 319
- request control 321
- save session markup 320
- session information 323
- show presenter window 321
- track changes 321
- Unlock View to Presenter 322
- Session ID 314
- Session Information 314
- Session Markup file 314
- Session Object 314
- Show Presenter Window 314
- Unlock View to Presenter 312
- real-time collaboration:Open Local File 313
- real-time collaboration:Open URL 313
- remove
 - offline files 329
- rename
 - markup layer 208
- render modes 114
- resolve local resources 180
- Resource icon 28

S

save

- markups 203

selecting entities 65

selecting views 46

Session Markup file 314

Show Net Connectivity 70

snap settings 183

snapping modes

- 2D 52, 235
- 3D 163, 254
- EDA 96, 242

specifying a view point 46

streaming file 31

Substituted Resource icon 28, 44

substituted resources 44

T

- text box visibility 278
- toggle
 - between layers 208
- toolbars 21
- tooltips 191

U

- user-defined coordinate system 144
 - activate 147
 - define 148
 - delete 146
 - modify 146
 - orientation options 145
 - position options 145

V

- version information 19
 - exporting 19
- View tab 26, 104

W

- walkthrough 172
- watermarks 286
- work offline 327, 328, 329
 - reconnect to server/backend 330
- workspace 66

X

- XRef paths 180

Feedback

If you have any questions or require support for AutoVue please contact your system administrator. Some customization and maintenance must be done on the server and cannot be implemented on the client machine. If the administrator is unable to resolve the issue, please contact Oracle Corp.

If at any time you have questions or concerns regarding AutoVue, call or e-mail us.

General Inquiries

Telephone:	+1.514.905.8400 or +1.800.363.5805
E-mail:	autovuesales_ww@oracle.com
Web Site:	http://www.oracle.com/autovue/index.html

Sales Inquiries

Telephone:	+1.514.905.8400 or +1.800.363.5805
E-mail:	autovuesales_ww@oracle.com

Customer Support

Web Site:	http://www.oracle.com/autovue/index.html
-----------	---